# नने'अळॅन'ख़ॖॸ'ऄॢॖॹॱख़ॖॱख़ॱॸॖऀज़'ज़ज़ज़ज़

बद्दर्भ में विवास्ति मि न में वासुन के सान्वन।

## Ghantapa's Oral Instructions of Co-emergent Five Deity Chakrasamvara

composed by Nyindzong Triwa (Throne Holder)

Döndrup Chöwang

معاص را مع مر م

published by the Drigung Kagyu Scripture Publishing House

त्र १७ मापामा १९ १६ वर्ष राज्येन (१० मारावद्वात्म मारामा वर्ष वर्ष वर्ष वर्ष १० १७ व्या वर्षक (१० म् ११० द्वाराम् (१५ वर्षाणे मुक्त ६ (१६ वर्षा १४ व्याप्टा १५ व्याप्टा १५ वर्षा १५ वर्षा १५ वर्ष दीत्यवागातीयतीवापत्रवाणीताक्ष्य न्यात्रवाक्षात्रवाक्षाव्यवा द्या द्वावकी। गाळ्या पाठ मार्थित मार्य मार्थित وأسراه مروس المرابع والمرابع و नामवा पात्न न्यात्मी न्याद्वपाव द्वादा । कि न्वादा दिनी त्रवाणकात्राम् द्वीरावरीकामावीरणदी नावित । । अवस्ति वित्रीण्यात्रवाकी g/2 m (120 m) m वीरपावपा नक्षेत्रस्थापातीषीक्षत्रीत्रत्रीत्रवाष्ट्रक्षपारगीत्रीकुमात्री Innining Langer and Stantial Levelle delle agrandant ماع رج اعد مسرع کرد در مس مرس رو در فر مرس ای او در می ساه رهر بخرده رام ساس عاب ره رام اهم المعالم روس المعالم ورم معالم معالم ورم معالم معالم معالم معالم المعالم ورم المعالم والمعالم والمعالم والم ورم المعالم والمعالم والمعالم والمعالم وال द्वान्वव्यापाना प्राचीत्र व किन्द्र वद्याप्य राज्येन



Drikung Kyabgön Chetsang

The Drikung Kagyu Scripture Publishing House is newly established at the Jangchubling Drikung Kagyu Institute in the holy land of India to publish any scriptures that exist from this tradition. Among the main works of publication there are also some important texts which are very much needed and we plan to publish more urgently in order to uphold, sustain, and spread the Buddha's teachings in general and the teachings of the Kagyu tradition in particular. Moreover we intend to translate them into other languages to quench the thirst of people in the world who desire the waters of practicing religion.

On this way, after vastly disseminating and promoting these Tibetan Dharma teachings and their culture to many countries through this publication, they will become cause for enjoying the glory of practicing marvelous virtue for sentient beings in both this life and beyond without a doubt.

Thus 9, Könchok Tenzin Künzang Thinle Lhündrup who is blessed with the name of Victorious Drikungpa, make aspiration prayers for these tasks to be accomplished in this way. Jangchubling Drikung Kagyu Institute in the holy land of India, on the 8<sup>th</sup> day of the 2<sup>nd</sup> month of the Tibetan Earth Bull year.

May goodness spread!

७७।   नरे : सर्के ना : धूद : भ्रे अ : धू: धू: दे यः नु दे : ब्रयः सु रः नी : द्रग्र रः कग
न्यरः श्रुवः याश्रयः न्यन्।
सर्केन्'न₹न्'न्र-व₹स'नर'न्स'नउत्।'''''
स्त स्रो भः स् स्टे स्त्रून मनगः ग्री रे ही नित्रा
इव क्षे अ इं खेर क्षे य वया रहें अ ह्रें व ता यो श्रे अ
গ ৪য়
१ हे सूर क्षरा शु चे द र्ख्या
२  ञ्चुनःत्रनरुद्देशःयःगशुक्षःर्षेद्दःरायम्
<u> </u>
१ र र नुः नुः दिः नदे : कः मुद्रे सः यिष्ठे श
ু গ্রা স্ক্রমান্ত্র প্রাল্ডি
य श्रुन परे स्प्राचित्र
१ न न न है । ब्रेन क्रम केर हीं र न
३ र् गहें र स नहर न स न बि
기 월드'되
শ্ ইশ্শ্ন
계 철자기·······
< गहें ने स्थापन राष्ट्रियान
< रे अर्केट्र इस चुन क्रम्य प्राया महिषा
१ र्बेर-र्रा अर्केर-इश्रेस कुर-र्गेशकुरा
१ नगर श्रु र छुन
५७ भ्रुनसप्दर्शे ५८ से सस्य न भ्रुट्य
गहेशःम्

#### Outline of Ghantapa's Oral Instructions of Co-emergent Five Deity Chakrasamvara

Foreword to [the Tibetan] printing

[Foreword to this printing by Jan-Ulrich Sobisch]

Homage and commitment of the author

- 1. General introduction to the Sadhana of the Co-emergent Five Deities
- 2. The actual body of the text of the Sadhana of the Co-emergent Five Deities in three parts
  - 2.1. Identification of the Dharma that should be practiced
  - 2.2. The manner in which it should be practiced
  - 2.3. The actual sadhana in three parts
    - 2.3.1. First, how to begin the session in five parts
      - 2.3.1.1. The two requisite conditions
        - 2.3.1.1.1. Place of practice
        - 2.3.1.1.2. Implements for the practice
      - 2.3.1.2. Blessing and tasting the nectar
      - 2.3.1.3. The torma offering in four parts
        - 2.3.1.3.1. Purifying
        - 2.3.1.3.2. Realizing
        - 2.3.1.3.3. Igniting
        - 2.3.1.3.4. Offering the torma
      - 2.3.1.4. Blessing the offering substances in two parts
        - 2.3.2.4.1. Needed vessels and offering substances
        - 2.3.2.4.2. The method of cleansing and purification
      - 2.3.1.5. Refuge and bodhicitta
    - 2.3.2. Second, the actual session in two parts: the branches and the main practice

गिर्देशःच। शुक् न्द्रिंशःवःप्यकः व्यवान्दरः न्द्रिंशः वावि विष्ठिशाः
(१) बुद्र-श्री-इत्यः दर्शे र्-श्री-प्यदः त्यवाः त्यः निवे : त्यवाः ।
₹य·यर्त्तेरःक्ते·ष्यत्।यत्।र्दरःर्यःयःत्रवे
१ भेर्र्न्नर्रेर्न्
श खुरुप्त्वास्य छेत्या
भ न्यान्यायम् होन् र्ख्या
< क्रेन्सेन्प्ति पश्चिमा
ক্অ'এই(ম'ন্ট্র)'অর'অবা'বাই শ'ম'অ'বা ধ্যুম
१ বৃদ্ধ শ্রী বৃষ্ণী শ নক্রন শ শ
ᢋᡝᢆ᠈ᠻᡈᢆ᠃ᢂᢆᡠᠵᢃᢆᢋᠫᢆ᠕᠄ᢇᡜᠵᢂᠵᠮ᠁᠁᠁
३ ৴ বিশ্বম শ্রীব শ্রী শ নক্ষন শ শ
इत्यः दर्ते र म्री :प्यद्र :यना ना शुक्ष :यः या दे श
श्रुदःवर्विदःनर्श्गे सःयःश्चे दःनश्रुदःम।
शुर-वर्षिर-वर्भे अन्य-हो-ज्ञवा-ह-वसूत्र-य-वाने शा
१ रे हे नु नवे श्रुद विदा
१ रे नमेमारायासुरानामार्नास्यामहिरा
ेश हिं से नभी र वर्ग ने मार्थ हिं से स्वाप के स
श नवीवार्यास्य स्वर्त्यान्य सामावित्र । । । । । । । । । । । । । । । । । । ।
নদীবাশ শ্রী শ্রী কিঁম প্রম ব্য নদ্রম বা
श्चेन गहे अ श्चें र हिर हे र से सक न से सा ।
क्षप्तर्ह्ये र ही प्यव त्यवा निवे राज्य विकेश
१२ नर्सेन्द्रस्य ग्रीः र्सेन्य र स्वित्र न सुन्य
१रे ले.चेश.ग्री.क्र्याश.दक्षे.च.क्र्य.श्ची.तमा.घेर
-

- 2.3.2. Second, the actual session in two parts: the branches and the main practice
  - 2.3.2.1. The four yoga branches of the session
    - 2.3.2.1.1. The first yoga branch in four parts
      - 2.3.2.1.1.1. Purifying the mind
      - 2.3.2.1.1.2. Purifying the body
      - 2.3.2.1.1.3. Purifying the speech
      - 2.3.2.1.1.4. Meditating on the Four Immeasurables
    - 2.3.2.1.2. The second yoga branch [blessing the constituents] in three parts
      - 2.3.2.1.2.1. Blessing the aggregates (skandhas)
      - 2.3.2.1.2.2. Blessing the sense sources (ayatanas)
      - 2.3.2.1.2.3. Blessing the elements
    - 2.3.2.1.3. The third yoga branch [protection cycle] in two parts
      - 2.3.2.1.3.1. General explanation on the meditation of the protection circle
      - 2.3.2.1.3.2. The specific explanation on the meditation of the protection circle in two parts
        - 2.3.2.1.3.2.1. The protection circle of the vajra fence
        - 2.3.2.1.3.2.2. Stabbing the obstructers with the dagger in two parts
          - 2.3.2.1.3.2.2.1. Generating the wrathful goddesses to summon obstructers
          - 2.3.2.1.3.2.2.2. Stabbing the obstructers with the dagger in two parts
            - 2.3.2.1.3.2.2.2.1. Stabbing the dagger into the crown of the obstructers
            - 2.3.2.1.3.2.2.2. Meditating on Vajrasattva to purify the two obscurations
    - 2.3.2.1.4. The fourth yoga branch in two parts
      - 2.3.2.1.4.1 Generating the field of accumulation of merit
      - 2.3.2.1.4.2. Accumulation of wisdom: bringing death onto the path of the Dharmakaya

(१) शुन् श्री: नृर्देश: नाबी: त्यः नाशुस्रः त्यस्
१ रे किर श्रेष्ठ वर्ष दे र सेर र सेर र से त्या हो र
१ रे ग्रेबि नहेन नहीं रामण ग्रेबिश
ेश द्युर-तःरेस-तर्रेग्य-तर्भुर-म्
१ इ.क्रुंचिशन्य स्ट्रान्ट हें हे न क्रुंच ना
३ वियादर्श्चिरानिवे निर्मे सार्द्धयायानिवे यश्
1. क्यप्रहें र नक्षें अपा
2 हे य.श.क्य.पत्र्यें र.श्रेय.श्रे.जय.पद्येर
3. ૾વૈવ:ઉત્કૃષ:વર્ફેર:વ:કુવ:વચા
१ रे हें द र्र नहें द स हैं ग्रेश र्ख्या
१ रे कुशसर वाश्वरादेनशः द्वारा वाहेश
१ हेव.बय.लय.वर.चश्चेर.च
श नहेद राष्ट्र न हो न राष्ट्र
३ रे र्याःस्क्रिंस्याः
<ul><li>ने ने न</li></ul>
५ रे भेशनान्डुनाः वैदान्तरानश्चरान
७ रे अर्के न्यान्य निष्ठे रामा निष्ठे रामा
শ্ মর্ক্টির্নান্যনির্নিশ্ব
१ नुसन्नरः द्रः वर्षे व्यः नः द्वे प्ये : सर्के दः य
श नागर-दनर-दन्धः स्वाधः न-वनुन् के दे सके दायाः ।
३। निराद्यराद्यायाचाद्यायाचाद्वीयाचाद्यायाच
<ul><li>वियान्तरःत्रः वर्षे वात्रः विविद्ये सक्ति।</li></ul>
1 1 1 1

- 2.3.2.2. The main practice of the session in three parts
  - 2.3.2.2.1. The wind-mind arising as the nada: bringing [the bardo] onto the path of the Sambhogakaya
  - 2.3.2.2. Generating the supporting base in two parts
    - 2.3.2.2.1. Generating the layered stack of elements
    - 2.3.2.2.2. Generating the multicolored lotus and vajra
  - 2.3.2.2.3. The way of meditating on the Four Yogas in four parts
    - 2.3.2.2.3.1. The yoga of meditation
    - 2.3.2.2.3.2. The subsequent yoga: bringing [birth] onto the path of the Nirmanakaya
    - 2.3.2.2.3.3. The perfect yoga in six parts
      - 2.3.2.2.3.3.1. The manner of completing the support and the supported
      - 2.3.2.2.3.3.2. The manner of detailed visualization in two parts
        - 2.3.2.2.3.3.2.1. Generating the support of the celestial palace
        - 2.3.2.2.3.3.2.2. Generating the supported deities
      - 2.3.2.2.3.3. Meditation on the purity
      - 2.3.2.2.3.3.4. Putting on the armor
      - 2.3.2.2.3.3.5. [Inviting and] entry of the wisdom beings and bestowing the empowerment
      - 2.3.2.2.3.3.6. The offering and praise in two parts
        - 2.3.2.2.3.3.6.1. The offering in four parts
          - 2.3.2.2.3.3.6.1.1. Vase empowerment and connected outer offering
          - 2.3.2.2.3.3.6.1.2. Secret empowerment and connected nectar offering
          - 2.3.2.2.3.3.6.1.3. Wisdom empowerment and connected offering of the Four Joys
          - 2.3.2.2.3.3.6.1.4. Word empowerment and connected

দ শৃহ বক্সু বৃষ্টি বৰ্ষ্ট্ বৃষ্ণ অ'বাই ঝ '''''
গ অব:গ্রী:শ্ব:বস্কুব্:গ্রী:বঞ্চুব্:বা
য়ৢ ৠয়য়ৣ৽৸ৼ৽ঽয়ৢৼয়ৢ৾ৼ৽য়ৄ৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽৽
4. इयप्रें र के द में दे हैं वाश्व रे या
गशुअःम। त्रुवःग्रीःसह्गःषःहेःक्ष्रमःग्रःमःषःमवेःषशाः
१ ৴ বন্ধুশ্যন্ত্র অব্যন্ত্রনাত্রনাত্রনাত্রনাত্রনাত্রনাত্রনাত্র
৾গ্ৰা বন্ধ্ৰম্ম্য ব্যান্ত্ৰম্থ্ৰম্
ব্য ন <u>ন্ধ</u> নেই ব্ৰু স্ট নুষ্ণ ব্য
শ্বন্ধ্র স্বাম
१ रे इन न्हा
३ र् गर्हेर संदे क्ष पर्हेर
< বৃষ্ট্রিদ্রেম্মরার্ক্তম্পর্যন্তি, ব্রাদ্রান্য নারিপ্র প্রম্পা
१ र्श्वेन्यमञ्जेम् वर्षेन्य वर्शेन्य वर्शेन्य वर्षे
श र्हेन्या चे त्विम त्ये
र्बास से दे हे द क्रेस बहुण हार ।
য়ৣৢৢৢৢৢৢৢৢৢৢয়ৢ৵য়য়৾য়ৢয়
ন্ম-গ্রেম স্ক্রিব্যক্তিবা মি দের নাম্বা বারি শ

offering of suchness

2.3.2.2.3.3.6.2. The two eight-line praises

2.3.2.2.3.3.6.2.1. Eight-line praise of the yab (Heruka)

2.3.2.2.3.3.6.2.2. Eight-line praise of the yum (consort)

2.3.2.2.3.4. The supreme yoga of the completion stage

2.3.3. The actions to be done at the end of the session in four parts

2.3.3.1. The three branches of recitation

2.3.3.1.1. The mala to count the recitations

2.3.3.1.2. Visualizations while reciting

2.3.3.1.3. The mantras to be recited

2.3.3.2. Concluding the session

2.3.3.3. The yoga of the torma

2.3.3.4. The conduct in between sessions in two parts

2.3.3.4.1. General yoga of conduct and hand offering

2.3.3.4.2. Ganachakra offering wheel

3. Author's colophon

4. Afterword by Drikung Kyabgön Padme Gyaltsen

5. Two different supplication prayers for this printing

[End Notes by Jan-Ulrich Sobisch]

### *न्नरः*श्चुवःगश्रयःत्रभृत्।

लूट्यात्म्यात्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात

न्रभीनश्राम्बर्धः क्षेत्रः क्ष्टः भी सुटा के सहित् हुरा हुरा मिन्रा सहित् सामिश्वी स्वाप्त स्

चक्किंशियाक्किंश्वराय्यां स्थानक्ष्मिं च्यात् स्थानक्ष्मिं सान्त्रात् स्थान्य स्थानक्ष्मिं स्थान्य स्थानक्ष्मिं स्थान्य स्थान

#### Foreword to [the Tibetan] printing

You who are the friend of all beings unacquainted, through the power of generating the excellent mind of complete liberation you manifested as the authentic lama, the tutor [of the Drigung Kyabgöns], may you, the great tutor Döndrup Chöwang be victorious.

Even though until now the place of birth, parents, and date of birth and death of the throne holder of the Nyindzong monastery in Kham, the great master Döndrup Chöwang, have not been discovered, in the earlier part of his life the sublime master himself went to Drikung in northern central [Tibet], and in front of many indisputable spiritual teachers, such as Tenzin Padme Gyaltsen, the fourth incarnation of the Drikung Kyabgön Chetsang Rinpoche, he completely mastered many sciences. He manifested the signs of impartial accomplishment of listening, contemplation, and meditation, and since at that time the innate and learned qualities of the sublime master himself were unequalled among the great Drikung Kagyu masters, he taught song, poetry, composition, and so forth to both the fifth Drikung Kyabgön Chungtsang Chönyi Norbu and the fifth Drikung Kyabgön Chetsang Thukje Nyima. During teachings [by the Drikung Kyabgöns] he gave supportive teachings and so forth, and he became a beautiful ornament to the teachings of the practice lineage.

Therefore he also had many disciples, and most of his literary works currently reside in the Drikung Dharma treasure. Among them [he composed] the commentary to the first stage, [the self-generation] of the *Co-emergent Five Deity Chakrasamvara* in the Water Dog Year 1802 called "Big Drum".

This [printing] project of *Ghantapa's Oral Transmission* was created by performing a detailed comparison of three or so differing original manuscripts.

म्बर्गा स्वर्त्ते त्रित्ते त् स्य स्वर्त्ते त्रे त्रित्ते त स्य स्वर्ति त्रित्ते त्रित्ते

शुं की २००८ हैं न द छेगा १५ हेद ने गा

क्रा ४०७४ श्व.चा ४ क्रमा ४० जन्चेंच्यस्य स्वास्त्र स्वस

[Because] a main objective [of this printing] was to not add or remove even one syllable of the original manuscript, we did not consider as important the need to modify the spelling [errors] and so forth. However, our intention was to try and bring attention to the essential point of the meaning as the definitive goal [of this printing].

The original manuscripts on which this text is mainly based are written in the Ume and Khamdri [cursive] scripts, and also [the Uchen script of manuscripts] which exist in the Drikung Kagyu Dharma treasure. Please note that [additional words that were not in all of the original manuscripts since they were differing] were inserted into the text in round brackets ()\*. Saying this I conclude:

Even though we who are serving [this printing] here don't have enough experience, this publishing effort was done in the form of a preliminary experiment and we hope for an extensive readership to give us abundant and effective feedback.

Written on March 15, 2009 by Könchok Pasang, chief-editor of the the Drikung Kagyu Scripture Publishing house.

\* Corrections of the Tibetan text during the translation process were inserted into the Tibetan in [square brackets] and probable spelling errors indicated with strikethough text in grey color. In the English translation [text in square brackets] indicates additional clarifications by the translator and Sanskrit translations are in round brackets. Also where helpful, numbers such as (1) were inserted for lists or referencing added illustrations. Translated by Mark Riege and Acharya Kinley Gyaltsen with the blessings from HH Drigung Kyabgön Chetsang Rinpoche, Songtsen Library, Dehra Dun, February 2012.

## [न्डैन्दे दे अन्नन्यर अन्यायय यस्ति]

#### Foreword to this printing by Jan-Ulrich Sobisch

In the second half of the 18<sup>th</sup> century Drikung Til monastery was thriving with spiritual activity. The 3<sup>rd</sup> Drikung Chungtsang Rinpoche, Könchog Tendzin Chökyi Nyima, inherited the throne when he had just become a teenager, but he immediately showed signs of being a very able leader. Garchen Rinpoche came to help to consecrate the late Chetsang Rinpoche's stupa and at that occasion he transmitted the collected works of the Kagyüpa masters like Marpa, Milarepa, Gampopa, Phagmodrupa, Jigten Gönpo and many others. Soon afterwards, the 4<sup>th</sup> Chetsang Rinpoche, Tendzin Padme Gyaltshen was discovered and brought to Drikung. In the 1780s and early 90s he received his formal education and spiritual training under Chökyi Nyima and took over the throne in 1788.

The teaching activity flourished further under him, many texts were composed and published and thankas were commissioned. He gave his first public *Gongchik* teaching when he was just 18 and later authored together with No-No Rinpoche and Changlochen Tulku the history of the throne holders of Drikung. In accordance with Jigten Gönpo's intention he revived the union of disciplined conduct ( $\hat{sila}$ ) and mahāmudrā as the core practise in Drikung Til, as it is taught in the *Gongchik* (6.13): "That mahāmudrā and disciplined conduct are one is an unsurpassed special teaching of Jigten Gönpo."

Among the many great teachers and disciples who remained close to the 4th Chetsang Rinpoche, one was the throne holder of the monastery Nyindzong in Kham, Könchog Döndrub Chöwang, who would later be a teacher of the following Chetsang and Chungtsang Rinpoches. He is described as having been both very learned and accomplished in practise. Over a period of many years he collected numerous notes on the Cakrasamvara practise with five deities in the tradition of the Indian Mahāsiddha Ghantapa (the other traditions being that of the Mahāsiddhas Luipa and Kṛṣṇacārya). Among the numerous deities of mantra (yi dam), Cakrasamvara with Five Deities was Jigten Gönpo's heart practise.

Its instructions came down to him through an unbroken lineage of Mahāsiddhas, translated from Sanskrit into Tibetan by the great Ga-Lotsawa Zhönu Päl, who transmitted it to Jigten Gönpo's root guru Phagmodrupa.\* The sādhana of this practise was finally brought into its present form by the 17<sup>th</sup> Drikungpa, Rinchen Phüntshog in the first half of the 16<sup>th</sup> century.\*\*

Könchog Döndrub Chöwang finally brought his notes on the sādhana into a form that he presented to the 4<sup>th</sup> Chetsang Rinpoche, Tendzin Padme Gyaltshen. Having checked the notes very carefully, the Kyabgön Rinpoche was very pleased with the composition and declared it to be trustworthy and authentic.

In our tradition, we do not engage in study (or composition) of scholarly commentaries of tantric practise. Instead, the instructions on sādhana practises of mantra deities come as an oral transmission through a lineage of realised masters.

If we want to engage in practising them, we have to receive tantric consecration (Tib. *dbang*), the reading transmission (*lung*), and instructions (*khrid*). The teachings have the form of pithy and to-the-point instructions (*man ngag*) that we receive through general teachings on the practise and by requesting personal instructions from our guru when we encounter doubts or problems in the practise. In our tradition we do also not mix instructions. That is, we do neither mix instructions on different *yidams* nor do we mix instructions from different traditions on the same *yidam* (unless there is a special purpose, such as the need to revive a practise when its transmission has grown weak).

<sup>\*</sup> Ga-Lotsawa's instructions are preserved in the form of a sādhana by Rigdzin Chökyi Dragpa in his collected writings, vol. 9, pp. 345-377.

<sup>\*\*</sup> Rinchen Phüntshog's sādhana differs from Ga-Lotsawa's instructions only with respect to the additional rituals of Gaṇacakra and the tormas offered at the end of the practise. Rinchen Phüntshog also included in his Cakrasamvara cycle an initiation and the burnt offering puja. The colophon of Rinchen Phüntshog's sādhana text only states that it was compiled by "Drikungpa Ratna" which earlier I understood to refer to the first Chetsang Rinpoche Künga Rinchen (Tib. "Rinchen" = Skt. "Ratna"). According to the lineage teachings, however, it was composed by Rinchen Phüntshog.

The reason is not sectarianism or anything like that, but simply great carefulness in striving for a pure transmission. Why would we want to dilute the instructions through which our lineage gurus realised the mantra teachings of the two stages? There is nothing to improve by adding something from other sources! Döndrub Chöwang's "commentary" is indeed just that: a careful preservation of the wealth of Ghantapa's Cakrasamvara Five Deities tradition, kept very pure within our great Drikung Kagyü tradition.

The text is literally called a "red instruction" (dmar khrid), where red refers to blood as the core, the "life-blood", etc., meaning that these are instructions that "lay bare" or get directly to the heart of the matter. These are instructions that pertain directly to each element of the practise in the sādhana in an immediate practical manner, without any theoretical or analytical concerns. The text is also called the "notes (zin bris) on the direct personal instructions (zhal shes) of the former Kagyüpas," which reveals its two aspects of being notes from teachings and of the teachings being direct personal instructions, i.e. received directly from the mouth of the guru. That these are written down is not a contradiction. Notes like these are never intended to replace direct oral instruction by one's own guru. Personal instructions will remain forever indispensable, because guidance is done through experience, not mechanically or through mere words. It needs an experienced master who understands what each disciple needs at every moment of the path. This text is therefore merely a repository for the wealth of instructions of this lineage. The guru alone knows when to withdraw which part of the wealth and how to spend it wisely on the disciple.

These notes on the Cakrasamvara sādhana were first published outside of Tibet as a copy of handwritten texts of Döndrub Chöwang reproduced by the late Tsöndu Senghe from Bir (publ. 1985). The handwriting is not always easy to decipher and it is also full of scribal errors. However, great effort has been put into preserving and correcting the original Tibetan text of the notes. Mark Riege's translation is a great service for everyone who seriously wants to engage into the practise of Cakrasamvara. Under the guidance of His Holiness Kyabgön Chetsang Rinpoche, Khenpo Nyima Gyaltshen and other great masters of our

tradition he has rendered the text skilfully in clear English. In this form this publication will serve the Drikung community of Cakrasamvara yoginis and yogis in the western world for many, many years to come.

Hamburg, 8/10/2012

Jan-Ulrich Sobisch

## 

म्राया विकालेश मुक्त म्राया म्राया म्राया म्राया म्राया म्राया प्रत्य क्षाया क्षाय क्राय क्षाय क्

## ७७। वि.स्.सी.पी.पी.सी.सा.सा.च.पी

विन्यम्स्यावयः वर्षे स्त्रेन्यस्य स्त्राचित्रः यहे स्वर्यः स्त्रित्रः स्त्रित् स्त्रित्रः स्त्रित्रः सत्तिः स

त्तव्यान्त्रियान्तियानियान्तियान्तियानियान्तियानियान्तियानियान्तियात्ति

द्यान्त्रान्त्रत्यः न्यतः स्ति स्वान्त्रत्याः स्वान्त्रत्याः स्वान्त्रत्यः स्वान्त्रत्यः स्वान्त्रत्यः स्वान्त स्वान्त्राच्यः स्वान्त्रत्यः स्वान्त्यः स्वान्त्रत्यः स्वान्त्यः स्वान्त्रत्यः स्वान्त्रत्यः स्वान्त्रत्यः स्वान्त्रत्यः स्वान्त्यः स्वान्त्रत्यः स्वान्त्रत्यः स्वान्त्रत्यः स्वान्त्रत्यः स्वान्त्रत्यः स्वान्त्रत्यः स्वान्त्रत्यः स्वत्यः स्वान्त्रत्यः स्वान्त्रत्यः स्वान्त्रत्यः स्वान्त्यः स्वत्यः स

#### SHRĪ CHAKRASAMVARA SAHAJ PAÑJ DEVA KRAMAH PRAKAR VIVARANĀM JYĀNAVARTĪ KANTŌST GHANDA MUKTĪRTHĀNĀM VIHARTI SMA

(Excellent explanation of Ghantapa's Oral Transmission of the stage of wisdom of the Co-emergent Glorious Five Deity Chakrasamvara)

This contains the essential instructions on the first stage, [the self-generation] of the Co-emergent Five Deity Chakrasamvara, the oral instructions of the Kagyu forefathers [which come] from recorded notes of Ghantapa's oral transmission.

# [Translator's Homage] NAMO GURU CHAKRASAMVARA BHYEI (Homage to you, Chakrasamvara!)

Mandala of vast knowledge who shines the light of love in the Dharmadhātu sky-like expanse, I prostrate to Lord Vajradhara, protector of the three worlds, may I not be separate [from you] until enlightenment is reached.

Gathering of wise root and lineage lamas, fearless on the Dharma and worldly lion thrones, who apprehend the four chakra wheels and two stages of ripening and liberation, and also the vast expanse of dakinis, [you are] the objects of veneration.

Lord Avalokiteshvara, miraculous dance of compassion, who again manifests himself in many names and emanations to tame beings,

[Chetsang Rinpoche] with the name of the lotus, chief of all families, always remain in the core of my heart.

Through the magical display of the hero Manjushri [you become] the orb of the sun who dispels the darkness of beings, new moon of compassion, [Chungtsang Rinpoche] Chökyi Gyaltsen, my hair stands on end in continuous devotion.

चर्चाची क्षेट ज्याद्वाद न्वित क्षेत्र क्षेत्र

पर्ट्र-प्र.र्क्र्यायपु :श्रीयःवययायट्ट्र-श्चरः॥ श्चीय्ट्र- यावयाचीयःगीयःश्चीयाक्ष्ययायक्षेत्रःयपु॥ वयःग्रयरःश्चर्यत्रःश्चिरःश्चेःश्चीःयञ्च्रुः यश्चर॥ वयःप्रत्युं रःयःश्चिर्ग्येवःश्चेःश्चेःस्थेःव॥

र्ट्स्त्रेन्स्स्र्व्याचीःर्योःस्वरःस्राक्षेत्रःश्चेत्रः। मुत्रदेवःत्रःस्रवेःत्र्येःस्वरःस्रवेश्चेत्रःत्रः॥ स्ट्रित्रंत्रःस्रवेःत्रवेःत्रवाःस्रवास्यःस्यः॥ स्ट्रित्रःस्रवेःत्रवेःत्रवाःस्रवास्यःस्यःस्वरः॥ स्ट्रित्रःस्रवेःत्रवेःत्रवेःत्रवेः

क्रिंगिर्न्द्रेत्रः क्षः त्यः क्रेशः स्ट्रिंग्यः त्या ते : क्रेशः क्षेत्राः नुत्राः त्ये : स्त्राः त्या । स्त्रिंगः त्ये द्राः त्या । क्रिंग्वे क्षेत्रः त्ये द्राः त्या । I bow to Heruka, mighty lord of the mandala wheel, simultaneous generation and completion free from coming together and dispersal, state of emptiness and equality beyond the extremes of existence or peace, increasing unconditioned bliss of meditative absorption, union of method and wisdom.

Seductive enchantress, seeing [you causes] the innate great bliss of Mahamudra [to arise] in disciples' mind streams, sole mother of infinite victorious [Buddhas], endowed with the glory of coral, please bestow my heart with the supreme wisdom of the four joys.

Like the heart of all Yogini tantras, essence of the ocean of profound secret root and explanatory tantras, the practice of this sadhana of Chakrasamvara is marveled at by all the learned masters of India and Tibet.

#### [Author's humility and promise]

Since I have not reached the supreme state the chances of benefiting others are slim, but in order to put an end to my propensities by looking at the meaning of tantra, and to revive my forgotten practice, I will write a little.

Even though he is completely ignorant of the meaning of the words, a parrot can voice the six syllable Mani mantra, and because that gives no occasion for scholars to mind, here, my [words] are also acceptable.

दे.लट.वट्टेर.श्रूच.ट्र्यूच.कुच.त्र.ह्र.ह्र.हे.ल.चे.सप्.वी.सप्.वी.प्रिच.श्रूच.श्रूच.श्रूच.श्रूच.श्रूच.

मुद्धित्तर्। द्र्भित्वाक्ष्यायय। द्रम्भित्वे। भ्रीत्र्याक्ष्याययः स्याप्त्रात्त्र्याः विश्वे स्थितः स्थ्याः स्थ्यः स्यः स्थ्यः स्थ्यः स्थ्यः स्थ्यः स्थ्यः स्थ्यः स्थ्यः स्थ्यः स्थ्यः

वेग्'राके'कुर'ह्यर'यर'शेशश'नश्चेर'णेत्।।

त्तर्भा वश्री स्थान्य वश्राचित्र वश्या क्षेत्र स्था क्षे

अर्रे दरः ध्वाया ग्रे छित् यर द्वर वी या द्वे।।

त्युर्यंत्रे न्ये न्यंत्रे भार्ये न्या विष्यं विषयं वि

With this regard, here I will explain the *Sadhana of the Co-emergent Five Deity Chakrasamvara* from the system of the great master Vajra Ghantapa. Of the two sections, the *General Introduction* and the *Actual Body* of the text, the first section [contains] the general method of accomplishing Buddhahood for sentient beings.

#### 1. General Introduction

The supreme teacher [Buddha], Friend like the Sun, taught countless approaches to the Dharma, in whatever way was necessary to tame each disciple. Although there are many detailed classifications, all of these can be summarized in the Maha- and Hinayana vehicles. Jigten Sumgön said in his condensed vajra verses [of the the *Gongchig (Single Intent)*]:

"The difference between the Mahayana and Hinayana vehicles is bodhicitta." <sup>1</sup>

So having the mind that wishes for all sentient beings to gain enlightenment first is regarded as the Mahayana, and the wish to gain liberation only for oneself is regarded as the Hinayana vehicle. Also within in the Mahayana one can distinguish the causal Paramita vehicle and the resultant Secret Mantra Vajrayana vehicle. It says in the vajra verses [of the *Gongchig*]:

"The difference between the Sutra and Mantra vehicles is the empowerment." <sup>2</sup>

The ripening of the empowerment and then the liberating instructions on the stages of meditation are called resultant Secret Mantra Vajrayana vehicle. Within this we can distinguish the (old) Nyingma and new [traditions], called also the Earlier and Later Translations.

Translations from the time of the earlier dissemination of Buddhism in Tibet and the scriptures of the Kangyur and Tengyur such as [the scriptures] born from the minds of Indian and Tibetan accomplished masters became known as oral transmissions of the [Nyingma] Early Translation [school]. These [scriptures] were concealed for future manifestation by the wise masters as treasures for the benefit of disciples. [Later] revealed and taught as Terma treasures by miraculous qualified Tertön treasure discoverers, they became part of the Nyingma tenets.

में में ज्ञान श्वीं न्यान्त। म्याय श्वीं मानामान स्याय हो ना श्वी मानाम्यमा। म्याय श्वीं मानामान स्याय हो ना श्वी मानाम्यमा। में म्याय श्वीं मानामान स्थाय।

देर्चरेश्चर्म वाहेश्चरे से से स्वत्राची स्वत्

यो.पर्येशालूर्यंस्याशीरको टुं.लट.सूर्यंस्याचीरो टुं.लकालु थे.कं.स.पटुं.वैटा सु पे.पर्येशालूर्यंस्याशीरका चुंर्यंस्याचीरो सूर्यंस्याची क्रियंस्याचीरा चुंर्यंस्याचीरात्स्याच्याचीर्याचीरात्स्याचीरात्स्याच्याचीर्याचीर्याचीर्याच्याचीर्याच्याचीर्याच्याच्याच्याच्याचीर्याच At the time of the later dissemination of the Dharma in Tibet, Panditas (scholars) and translators made corrections of earlier translations, and made new translations which became known as the New [Translation] Schools. Here we are going to deal with the New Schools.

Within that there are four main classifications of tantra. The *Chakrasamvara Root Tantra* with 51 chapters (*Srī-Herukābhidhāna*)<sup>3</sup> says:

"The Sutra basket, Action (Kriyatantra),
Performance (Caryatantra),
Yoga(tantra), and Ultimate Secret [Mantra]<sup>4</sup> are the classifications,
and sentient beings by their inclinations
like to engage in this or that [practice]."

Thus the extensive teachings of the Mahayana sutras such as the Six Paramitas are the causal [vehicle], and Action (Kriya)tantra, Performance (Carya)tantra, Yoga(tantra), and Ultimate Secret Mantra [namely the] Unexcelled (Anuttara-Yoga)tantra, these four are explained as resultant Secret Mantra [vehicle].

Similarly there are quite a lot of sub-divisions in each tantra class. In particular in the Unexcelled [Secret Mantra] there are father tantras, mother tantras, and non-dual tantras and among those, here within the present mother tantras there are also many [tantras] like Hevajra, the Four Seats (Catuhpitha), Mahamaya, Buddhakapala, Chakrasamvara and so forth, of which this is Chakrasamvara.

Within Chakrasamvara there are the three [sub-divisions] of root, explanatory, and pith instruction tantras. Although among those, the root tantra is said to have 100,000 chapters, it has not been translated in Tibet. [Only the *Chakrasamvara Tantra* with] 51 chapters which came from it, was established and recognized as root tantra in Tibet. A subsequent tantra (Uttaratantra) [called] *Namkha dang Nyampa (Equal to the Extent of Space)* is said to have 100,000 stanzas, but it was also not translated and of this only five chapters exist.

नन्तुन्दी क्रेंनन्देव्से मुनक्षा

त्म् क्रि. शक्त् . प्रकृश प्रश्ने व्या क्ष्य क्ष्य व्या क्ष्य क्

Regarding explanatory tantras Lopön Mithub Dawa (the Mahasiddha Durjayacandra) said:

"The *Dakini's Source* and *All Conducts*, likewise the *Tantra of the Supreme Name of the Guru* and the *Tantra of Embracing*, these four are to be known as the explanatory tantras."

Here "Khandro (Dakini)" is (1) Dorje Khandrö Gyü (Vajradakini Tantra),6 ["Künchö (All Conducts)" is (2) Neljorma Künchö (All Conducts of the Yoginis),7] "Tsen Chok Lame Gyü (Tantra of the Supreme Name of the Guru)" is the (3) Abhidhana or Ngönjö Lama (Direct Expression of the Guru),8 "Khajor (Embracing)" is the (4) Sambhuta,9 and "Jungwa (Source)" is understood as the three of (5) Heruka Ngönjung (Manifestation of Heruka),10 Phagmo Ngönjung (Manifestation of Varahi, Varjavarahiabhibhaotantra),11 and Dompa Jungwa (Sources of Chakrasamvara, Samvarudbhao),12 [so] we come to five divisions of the explanatory tantras. Darikapa said that by adding both (6) Neljorma Shi Sheljorwa (Four Yoginis in Union) 13 and (7) Khandro Gyamtso (Ocean of Dakinis), 14 we can distinguish seven explanatory tantras.

The *Namkhadang Nyampe Gyü* (*Tantra Equal to Space*) <sup>15</sup> and so forth are considered pith instruction tantras, which could be either the root tantra's latter part that has 100,000 stanzas, or the *Dumbu Ngapa* (*Five Collections*) <sup>16</sup> that was established in Tibet, or they could be seen as two different [texts] (however this is not seen as an important point). Many similar tantras were also taught.

It is said in the texts of earlier scholars and accomplished masters that the place where tantras such as this were taught is the top of Mt. Sumeru [the 32'nd god realm], the time when it was taught was the age of strife, the teacher is Heruka, the supplicant is Vajravarahi, the collectors of the tantric teachings are the yoginis, and the place where they were collected is Uddiyana.

द्रम्भःस्थःत्वीद्रःस्थःत्वश् क्षाः स्वान्यः स्वान्यः स्वान्यः स्वान्यः स्वान्यः स्वान्यः स्वान्यः स्वान्यः स्व स्वान्यः स्वायः स्वान्यः स्वान्यः स्वान्यः स्वान्यः स्वान्यः स्वान्यः स्वान्यः स्वान्यः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वयः स्वयः स्वयः स्वयः स्वयः स्व

इ.क्रीट्रालमा स्.क्रीट्रालमा स.क्रीट्रालमा स.क्रीट्रा

त्वार्यक्ष्यस्य क्ष्यस्य क्षयस्य विष्य विष्य विष्य विष्य विष्य विष्य विष्य विष्य विष्य विष

In the noble land of India from among those who listened, taught, and practiced, [as numerous] as stars in the sky, the most renown for this class of tantras are the mighty lord yogi Luhipa, Krishnacharia (Nagpopa), and Master Ghantapa (Drilbupa) who are referred to as Lu, Nak, and Dril. This particular Chakrasamvara [practice] is famous for [having led them to] spiritual attainment, and since the texts of these three Mahasiddhas have great blessings, they [became] widely spread. And because they are famous like the sun and moon, there is a variety of earlier and later translations in Tibet as well.

The main body of this tradition of Master Ghantapa is considered to be based on the 3 chapters [of the *generation stage*, *completion stage*, and *mantras and activities*] of the pith instruction tantra *Namkhadang Nyampe Gyü (Tantra Equal to Space)*, and all the branches were created based on all the various root and explanatory [tantras] and were translated by the great glorious Ga Lotsawa in Tibet, who attained the siddhis through this. He transmitted it to the glorious Phagmodrupa who then transmitted it to the protector of the three worlds Lord Jigten Sumgön, who practiced it as his main yidam deity. From there an uninterrupted lineage of accomplished masters of the precious practicing lineage practiced this as their main yidam deity.

Before doing this practice one needs to receive the empowerment properly. The root tantra says:

"By the empowerment obtained from the lineage lama the mantra is endowed with excellence."

And the same text says about not getting [the empowerment]:

"A mantra practitioner who does not see the [empowerment] mandala is like someone who wishes to be a yogi [but] beats the sky with clenched fists and drinks the water of a mirage."

Moreover the *Gongchig* says:

"The transmission of dharma which streams from the lineage is profound and amazing."  $^{\rm 17}\,$ 

यम् १६८ क्षुत्र प्रते विष्य दि । विष्य दि । विष्य दि । विष्य प्रते । विषय विषय । विषय । विषय विषय । विषय ।

मिश्रमा न्र्स्यम्बर्धिः श्रीनःश्रमम् । त्याप्तः । १ स्यापः १ स्थानः १ स्यानः १ स्थानः १ स्थानः १ स्थानः १ स्थानः १ स्थानः १ स्थानः १ स्था

 $\xi \cdot \underbrace{g}_{\text{A}} \cdot \widehat{g}_{\text{A}} \cdot \widehat{g}_{\text{A$ 

ब्रे म्यान्त्रेश्वा है स्वराद्ध्या स्वर्ष्य वि स्वराद्ध्या है। स्वराद्ध्या स्वर्ष्य स्वर्य स्वर्ष्य स्वर्य स्वर्ष्य स्वर्ष्य स्वर्ष्य स्वर्य स्वर्ष्य स्वर्ष्य स्वर्ष्य स्वर्य स्वयः स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वयः स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वयः स्वर्य स्वयः स्वर्य स्वयः स्वर्य स्वयः स्वयः स्वर

The yogi who receives the empowerment into this mandala properly [can] practice the method to accomplish this.

#### 2. Actual body of the text

Second, the explanation of the (sequence of the) *actual text*: which is the sadhana *Bestowing the Supreme Two-fold Benefit* composed by [Rinchen Püntsog,] the one bearing the name of the victorious Ratna, who is all-knowing in the degenerate time. The outline is as follows:

identification of the Dharma that should be practiced, the manner in which should be practiced, and the three parts of the actual sadhana.

#### 2.1. Identification of the dharma that should be practiced

First, regarding the *Dharma that should be practiced* Lord Jigten Sumgön said:

"The deities taught in the sutras and tantras [should be] held as principal.<sup>18</sup>
Practitioners with superior faculties need extensive rituals.<sup>19</sup>
All elaborations are the natural state's dependent originations."<sup>20</sup>

The history of the Chakrasamvara tantra which is the essence of mother tantra yogas, and how it came about is illuminated in detail in the compositions of Lord Chökyi Drakpa, in brief we explained it earlier.<sup>21</sup>

#### 2.2. The manner in which should be practiced

The second part of the general introduction is the *manner of how one* should practice with the general and particular [instructions] in 14 [steps] on how to practice the two stages [of generation and completion] of this very Chakrasamvara root tantra. Ratnarakshita commented on the succession of the generation stage:

"What to know about the three aspects of yoga: the yogas of blessing [at the beginning of the session], and of well blessed [in the middle], and of inconceivable perfected form [at the end] are praised by the Buddhas." ब्रुव:ग्री:सर्गे ब्रुव:ग्री:न्द्रेश:ग्रीवी ब्रुव:ग्री:सबत:ग्राश्वस:स्। श्री:न्व:ग्री:प्रेस:प्रामीवी ब्रुव:ग्री:सबत:ग्रीस:स्।

ब्रुवःसर्वो त्यवरः। क्रेंवःदर्वो दरः। इत्यःदर्वे रःक्रीः पवःवागानिके सःवस। दरः से (वे)।

र्ट्रास्ट्रिं वात्रशन्द्रा ल्.च्रिट्राचिष्ठेशासशा

**न्दःश्रा श्रुवःमदेःम्बर्यःदी** सर्देवःनईन्यस्

मुन्नः नं सं अक्ष्यं न्या क्ष्यं क्य

#### 2.3. The actual sadhana

The third part of the general introduction is the *actual sadhana to practice* in three parts: what to do at the *beginning of the session*, the *actual session*, and the *end of the session*.

#### 2.3.1. The beginning of the session

The first part [of the beginning of the session] includes the sections on the preliminaries [which are followed by the actual session with] the *branches of yoga*. First,

"the preliminaries are taught as: (1) the requisite conditions, (2) blessing and (3) tasting of the nectar,

- (4) torma offering and (5) blessing the offering,
- (6) refuge, and (7) bodhicitta,

and the branches of yoga are: (8) purification of the three doors [of body, speech and mind],

the (9) immeasurables and (10) blessing the aggregates (skandhas) and so forth,

the (11) protection circle, (12) purifying obscurations and gathering the two accumulations (13 and 14)."

#### 2.3.1.1. The requisite conditions

The first section [of the requisite conditions] has two parts: *place* and *implements* [of practice].

#### 2.3.1.1.1. Place of practice

First, regarding the *place of accomplishment* the *Abhidhana* says:

"Mountain valleys and peaks, banks of a great river, shores of the ocean, a tree and places of abiding virtue, dwellings of Mamo<sup>22</sup> spirits or cemeteries, various regions of solitude, or temples and stupas, in homes and at cross roads, if the practitioner accomplishes yoga [there], fulfillment of all wishes is granted." वर्रेर्न्स्गुत्रःश्चे वड्डशः तुः क्षेत्र । विश्वःसः क्ष्रूतः ज्ञानः तुरः दुर्वे ।

महिमा में महिमाना विभाभी हो भाभी हो विराध प्राध्य प्राध्य प्रिया प्राध्य प्रा

बेशन्त्रुद्धः प्रभा प्रेश्यः अप्तान्त्र व्यात्र प्रमान्त्र विष्यः प्रमान्त्र विष्यः प्रमान्त्र विष्यः प्रमान्त्र विषयः प्रमान्यः प्रमान्त्र विषयः प्रमान्त्र विषयः प्रमान्त्र विषयः प्रमान्त

द्राधी ह्या प्रति स्वाप्ति स्वापित स्व

Thus any place is appropriate.

#### 3.3.1.1.2. Implements for the practice

Second the [practice] *implements*: gather paintings [or] statues, outer and inner offering tormas, put the inner offering, vajra, bell, damaru drum and so forth in front of yourself, and if your hair is bound, release it. Seated on an actual or imagined corpse seat, take a blessing pill. The *Abhidhana* says:

Meat, bone marrow, fat, and spit, pasted together with semen and menstrual blood, if the yogi makes his blessing pill and eats it, his attainments are certain."

If you don't have any actual [nectar substance], place the blessed inner offering [from a previous practice session] on the tongue.

And as the Samvarodaya says:

"First the yogi has the appearance of the two-armed Chakrasamvara deity."

[The sadhana begins:]

"I am instantly visible as the clear form of the Co-emergent Exalted One."

This is not a mere saying, but you are instantly the body of Chakrasamvara who is blue color like a sesame flower, with one face, three eyes, slightly bared fangs, a hair knot [adorned] with a jewel on top, a crossed vajra in front, and a half moon to the left, and waves of a silken ribbon furling in three turns. Five dried skulls with jewel crest ornaments, joined together by a vajra garland, are bound on the hairline. He wears a garland of fifty fresh skulls and the five symbolic bone ornaments [a great bone wheel, earrings, necklace, bracelets, and belt] together with the cover of human ashes [forming] the six mudras. He wears a loose tiger skin skirt and shows the nine moods of dance [seductive, heroic, and terrifying, laughing, stern, and ravenous, compassionate, peaceful, and wondrous].

 $\frac{8}{8} \frac{1}{4} \cdot \left[ \frac{1}{8} \cdot \frac{1}{4} \cdot \frac{$ 

म्निन्दिन्दिन्दि। स्वायाचेनाच्याचित्रः विष्यादेनाच्याचित्रः विष्याहे स्वायाचेत्रः केवे ।

दे.लट.श्रु.अर्देग्नास्रम् अळ्दे र्सेम् अर्दे वा श्रु ड्रमः श्रेदः या प्रत्ये वा प्रत्ये वा स्त्र वा स

महिमान नर्तः है है निता क्षा क्षा कर्ता कर्ता है स्थान निवास कर्ता है स्थान नर्ता है स्थान नर्ता है स्थान नर्ता है स्थान निवास है स्थान स्यान स्थान स

His two hands hold a vajra and bell and embrace the consort, his right leg is stretched out on the chest of red Kalaratri, and the left leg bent, trampling on the bent back [fore]head of black Bhairava.

The consort is red Vajravarahi, young and beautiful, reaching maturity, with one face, two hands, three eyes and free flowing hair, with a head ornament of five and a necklace of fifty dry skulls, and adorned with the five mudra ornaments without the human ashes, her right hand holding a curved vajra knife aloft in the sky, and the left around the neck of the yab (Heruka) holding a skull cup lotus vessel. Her left leg is stretched out and the right bent clasping the yab's waist, and the experience of great bliss spreads with the magnificence of the yab and yum together blazing like the fire at the end of an eon – clearly visualize them abiding on a lotus and sun seat!

The profound essential point of this instantaneous generation is to enter the deity in one instant, as the precious Dharma Lord Jigten Sumgön explained.<sup>23</sup>

Moreover the color of the body, the implements and so forth are not merely arbitrary, and it is important that you are not too loose but visualize this clearly from the very beginning.

#### 2.3.1.2. Blessing and tasting the nectar

Second, *blessing and tasting the nectar*: visualize the inner offering in front of yourself.

By uttering **OM** KHANDAROHE **HUNG** HŪNG **PHAT** red light radiates from the syllable **H**ŪNG that stands on a sun [disk] in your heart center, and countless red Khandarohās holding curved knifes and skull cups emanate. Imagine that they are banishing all obstructers residing in the inner offering substance to a far away distance beyond, so that they will not be able to come back. The wrathful deities return and enter into your heart. Rest in the state of inseparable bliss and emptiness. The mantra is the name mantra of the dakini Khandarohā [with] **OM** and **HUNG** HŪNG **PHAT** which has various meanings and here serves to purify obstructers and obstacles.

सर्गा सर्गान्यस्य प्रमान्यस्य व्यवस्य क्षेत्रः स्वेत्रः स्व

ब्र-निहेश्या निहान स्थान स्था

त्रमः म् त्रम् व्यक्षः व

য়ৣয়ৼড়ৼৼঀৢয়৽য়ৣ৽ঀৣ৾৽ঀয়য়ৼয়৾৽য়য়৽য়য়য়৽ঀ৽ঀয়য়ৼয়৾ৄঀয়ৼড়ৣ৾য়৽ঀৣ৾৽ঀয়য়ৼয়৾৽য়য়৽য়য়ৣয়ৼয়৾৽

#### OM SVABHĀVA SHUDDHĀH SARVA DHARMĀH SVABHĀVA SHUDDHOH -

HANG means "All phenomena are pure by nature, I am pure by nature." By saying this mantra the skull cup with the nectar substance [becomes] emptiness in which there is no perception. Rest in equanimity for a moment, in the state where your wind energy and mind become mixed with bliss. The perfect essential point is to turn away from ordinary appearances and conceptions and purify impurities.

From that state of emptiness, in place of the nectar instantly arises a blue YAM syllable. It completely melts into light and arises as a wind mandala like a curved (tightened) bow [or] a half moon with the round side in the back and the open side facing towards you. It is marked by a YAM syllable in its center. On both the left and right side visualize waving three-pointed banners (see image on p.66).

On top of this arises a red **RAM** syllable. This also completely melts into light, and arises as a triangular red fire mandala with one corner facing you. It is marked by a burning **RAM** syllable in its center, and at its three corners arise the syllables **OM**, **ĀH**, and **HŪNG** having the nature of body, speech, and mind. They melt and arise as a tripod hearth of three human heads facing outwards. Even though there are preferences to visualize these heads as either wet or dry, both mean the same, so you can visualize according to your preference.

On top of those, from a dissolving white  $\bar{A}H$  syllable which has the nature of non-arising comes a vast and spacious skull cup, its inside red symbolizing bliss and outside white symbolizing emptiness. It is a single piece without fragment lines which represents the inseparability of bliss and emptiness. The forehead [of the skull cup] faces towards you, and inside from a deep-blue  $H\bar{U}NG$  in the center [comes] blue urine, in the east [in front of you] from a white OM [comes] yellow excrement, in the north [on the right side] from a green KHAM [comes] white brains, in the west [in the back] from a red  $\bar{A}M$  [comes] white bodhicitta (semen), and in the south [on the left side] from a yellow  $TR\bar{A}M$  [comes] red Rakta (menstrual blood).

And again in the center from red  $B\bar{A}M$  [comes] red human meat, from white  $L\bar{A}M$  in the south-east [left front comes] black beef,

ড়त्रान्त्र क्ष्रिं तुन्त्र स्थ्र क्ष्रे क्ष्र क्ष

ने वितानक्षन्य द्वारा श्वर हिंग्या श्वर ग्राया श्वर प्या

महिश्या हिंगश्या दे विश्व स्थान विश्व स्थान स्यान स्थान स्य

from blue MĀM in the south-west [left back comes] red dog meat, from red PĀM in the north-west [right back comes] white elephant meat, and from green TĀM in the north-east [right front comes] green horse meat. Also when generating the symbols, the letters are standing upright half submerged in the substances.

The method of blessing [includes the steps of] *purifying*, *realizing*, and *igniting*.

#### 2.3.1.2.1. Purifying

First *purifying*: when the wind from your nostrils hits and agitates the banners on the left and right of

company to the control of the contro

(practitioner sits here)

the wind mandala, they gently wave which creates a strong wind blowing from the YAM. From RAM on top red fire suddenly flares up which heats up the skull cup above. The ten substances inside with their seed syllables melt like butter and are boiled. Visualize that all the impure defilements are purified and it turns into completely pure orange-colored samaya (commitment) nectar radiating light.

#### 2.3.1.2.2. Realizing

Second *realizing*: from its steam forms the appearance of an upside down HŪNG syllable. Because the *Samvarodaya*<sup>24</sup> teaches that a white Khatvānga arises from a quicksilver colored HŪNG above, we need to visualize this, even though the HŪNG is not mentioned [in this sadhana]. The [HŪNG] melts and becomes a white Khatvānga with its tip facing down, its nature the ultimate bodhicitta of Heruka's mind stream, dripping down nectar of bodhicitta.

From the steam below it melts and falls into the filled skull cup, mixing inseparably with the nectar. Through this the ocean of nectar becomes white in color and cool-feeling to the touch - visualize it becoming the nature of bodhicitta.

**गशुम्रामा सम्भिर्**देन् सेयान है। सर्वे मार्के प्रमा सहुवा हु हैं । हुं नह सूर नदे 'न्जुरश'नाश्रय'ळंर'नाहेन'नाहें न'नदे 'नर्नु'हेदे 'श्रेर'न्। अ'से 'ग'से 'वर्ने न'श्रु'ळेंनश राविना तृः श्रुप्त दे र्पेट्या शुः श्रुप्त रायया और नगर रो। अंश्रुप्त रो निस्ति स्था यम्वेतायानाम्याम् । व्याप्ताम्याम् व्याप्ताम्याम् । व्याप्तम्याम् व्याप्ताम्याम् । स्र-प्याप्त स्त्रा द्वीते कु अक्टें के वर्षे अविश्वापति स्तर्य विश्वापति । नर्र-हि-इसम्याम् प्र-चेर-मुम्याद्य-नःइसम्याभ्यास्त्र-स्वाम्यम् निर्दे नेत्र-प्र-वास्त्रस्य च्ची खूर चुरावरा नगाना है। क्रेंसायर पहना या क्रेंस प्राय के विकास के साम क्रिया के स्वाय प्राय के स्वाय प्राय यो याशुक्षात्य वेसा दे याशुक्षात्य र र्षे रक्षुश्य वेसा खु र रूँ त्य वेसा रूँ त्य दिसा के या वे त्य क्रे-द्र-प्रदेशप्रमा थे-पेशभी-पर्द्र-क्रे-द्रग्र-विर-प्रश्रेषाचावग्रेद-भी-पर्दे-चर्मेद्र-व्रश म। अर्चेव क्ष्रश्र हे रुषा वेदिश सूर् ग्रह स्वन [वर्]म से र पदे कि अर्के र श्रूर नर से श सेर्'यो के या ग्री नरे नया सुया नर नर नयस।

तर्म त्या श्रीट्र-वार्ष्ट्र-वार्ष्ट्र-वार्ष्ट्र-वार्ष्ट्र-वार्ष्ट्र-वार्ष्ट्र-वार्ष्ट्र-वार्ष्ट्र-वार्ष्ट्र-वार्ष्ट् व्या श्रीट्र-वार्ष्ट्र-वार्ष्ट्र-वार्ष्ट्र-वार्ष्ट्र-वार्ष्ट्र-वार्ष्ट्र-वार्ष्ट्र-वार्ष्ट्र-वार्ष्ट्र-वार्ष्ट् वर्ष्ट्र-वार्ष्ट्

मश्चाम मह्माया व्याप्त व्यापत व्य

#### 2.3.1.2.3. Igniting

Third, igniting and spreading: recite the vowels and consonants once attaching OM at the beginning and HUNG HŪNG PHAT at the end. [The syllables] are above the nectar with the vowels and consonants having turned into various colors. They completely transform into white OM, red ĀH, and blue HŪNG stacked upon one another, radiating light, which collects the blessings of body, speech, and mind of all the Sugatas (Gone To Bliss) pervading all realms of space. [Their blessings] dissolve into the three letters, and again light radiates, also drawing in the naturally existing nectars that abide in the outer great oceans and so forth. The light turns all beings into the deities of the chakras of body, speech, and mind, and summons [them], and from the passionate afterglow of the union of meditative absorption they melt and dissolve into the three syllables which also dissolve: Om dissolves into ĀH, ĀH dissolves into HŪNG, and HŪNG merges into the commitment nectar. This turns it into white and cooling wisdom nectar which is able to produce undefiled bliss. Imagine that it becomes an ocean of limitless enjoyments for all the guests.

Recite OM ĀH HŪNG three times and finally, touching the [base of the] ring finger with the thumb [dip the ring finger into the skull-cup and put a drop of] nectar on your tongue and taste. Imagine that your body is filled with the bliss of undefiled wisdom.

This way of doing the blessing of the nectar and torma is as in the 32<sup>nd</sup> chapter of the *Samvarodaya Tantra*<sup>25</sup> and it is similarly explained in Ghantapa's *Drubthab Yishin Norbu* (*Sadhana of the Wishfulfilling Jewel*).<sup>26</sup>

#### 2.3.1.3. Offering the torma

Third, the *torma offering*: in the Indian texts this is not explicitly made clear, but Luhipa's<sup>27</sup> commentary explanation *Khyepar Selche (Particular Illumination)*<sup>28</sup> says that the torma activities are the same as taught earlier [for the inner offering, however] it is offered to the guardians of the directions.

स्वाक्तिः दश्यः वर्ष्ण्यः वर्षः वर्ष्ण्यः स्वाक्ष्यः स्वाक्षः स्वाक्षः स्वाक्षः स्वाक्षः स्वाक्षः स्वाक्षः स्वाक्षः स्वाक्षः स्वावक्षः स्वावक्षः स्वाक्षः स्वाक्षः स्वावक्षः स्वावक्

सहंतः र्के. सर्त् न्युक्षः न्युदः र्के. देशः स्वरः श्रुद्धः । स्वरः देशः हे नहत्वः परः रतः तृः श्रुद्धः । त्र् स्वरः देशः हे । नहत्वः परः रतः तृः श्रुद्धः । । स्वरः द्वाः स्वरः द्वाः स्वरः तृः नश्रीः । । स्वरः देशः स्वरः स्वरः

क्रीश्रक्ष्यश्रक्ष्यत्रम् विवास्त्रम् विवास्त्रम्यम्यम्यम्यस्त्रम् विवास्त्रम् विवास्त्रम् विवास्त्रम् विवास्त्रम

Sprinkle [vase] water and [a few drops of] the inner offering [on the torma] and bless the five meats and five nectars as with the [inner offering] nectar. Even though the sadhana text does not mention this, from the heart of yourself as Heruka light radiates like a hook which is cast into the hearts of the main guardians of the directions who reside in the eight charnel grounds. Imagine inviting each of the eleven complete groups of guests such as gods, nagas and so forth. Say PHEM and turn the blazing mudra left and right at the forehead. The *Samvarodaya* says:

"With both index fingers coiling around each other and the middle fingers touching each other,
[as well as] the thumbs, form a vajra, well and firmly joined together.

Then place it excellently at the center of the forehead, turn it and circle it around each and every way.

Press down the feet and look upwards, utter the sound PHEM and summon all the heroes and yoginis staying in the worldly realms of the ten directions."

Just as it is also explained in the commentaries, invite the guests by summoning them with the four mudras of the feet, eyes, speech, and hands. Visualize them abiding in the eight cardinal and inter-cardinal directions, open and extend the palms, and raise the torma with devotion turning counter-clockwise to the four cardinal directions and clockwise to the inter-cardinal directions. Then offer the torma while concentrating on the meaning of the mantra [described below].

Since it says in the *Dorje Tsemo* (*Vajra Peak, Vajrasekhara-mahaguhya-yoga*)<sup>29</sup> tantra that **OM** "bestows excellence and riches, glory and wealth", it is appropriate to engage in the torma offering with it here, and **KHA KHA** "eat, eat!" **KHĀ HI KHĀ HI** "please eat, please eat," **SARVA** "all," [then] all these guests need to be listed: **YAKSHA** "harm bringing demons," **RAKSHASA** "blood-thirsty demons," **BHŪTA** "elemental spirits," **PRETA** "hungry ghosts," **PĪSHĀCA** "flesh eaters," **UNMĀDA** "crazy making demons,"

લ્લાના ક્ષારા વર્કે રાંગ્રેના ક્ર $\frac{2}{3}$ [મ] અધ્યત તર્ગ્રો ક્ર $\frac{2}{3}$ [મો.]ફ્રી અધ્યત તર્ગ્રા લાકે લ र्श्रेन्य स्यान्ते सळ्यय स्र्रीन् की त्रुयायय। त्रुम्मी मि नुष्टु न्यः यातर दर्के स्याय स्रिन्य स्य इसराया क्षे.श्र.य.चूरी योट्ट्रें याड्डें यडीट.टे.यार्श्र्या रा.श.ल.र्घेंडी ट्रा. क्रिंगः खुर्र अः निन अः स्रा नद्गाः स्य अक् से हैं : ह्ये। नद्गाः सः दर्र अः नुनः वस्य उद्या दाः सः [종] 국리·传·춫데 때·후[휨·]리 를 ·왕국·오춧독·리 때·륌출 | 국·왕국 및 [왕]되 되크요· नरःश्रीका शे:नःश नहरःनरःश्रीका हें:श्रुःश <del>श्र</del>ूकः।श्रूकः।नरःश्रीका सू:हे:ग्राःसःश देसः यायमायायन्यायम् यायाम्यसागूहाणा वन्यायी ग्रानायसमाउन्। सञ्चायी वने वान्या या नै: भुड्डा थे। इस सर प्रायदि। अ दूर्धि ग गर्ने र र्श्वेगश इ सह । सहप्रायदि। बेश अर्थे द मी मान का भ्राप्त मान अर्थे का मान के निकास के मान कर मान कर के निकास के मान के म इसरायाळ्याविरायसावासुरावासुर्यायसायारावासावा देप्परायरावी मुवारावास्य थूं सें मुनाद में न्यामें न्यामा न्या हु से न्या सें स्वाप सें से स्वर्थ से चर-सुवानमा नरे-क्रूँर बना से र ग्री नरे नमा सहे माना रहा। नर्ना वापा पार वास र सा বার্ট্ পার্স্ক্রীর্যানর বেশ-ছেন্-রেলি নের বেশ্রব্র-বেশ শ্রীন্-বেশ নম্মা

नविःम। अर्केन्द्रशः चैतःनक्ष्मः भाषाति। **न्हःम। ब्राह्मः अर्केन्द्रशः हैः स्ट्रः** वे स्

APASMĀRA "demons of oblivion," DĀKA"dakas," and DĀKINI joined with ADĪ "and other kinds," becomes DĀKINIYADAYĀ "to the dakinis and so forth," IMAM BALING "this torma," GRIHANTU "take it," SAMAYA RAKSHANTU "uphold your commitment," MAMA "to me," SARVA SIDDHIM ME "all accomplishments to me," PRAYACCHANTU "bestow well," YATHEIVAM "whatever desired," YATHEISHTAM similarly ["whatever wished for,"] BHUÑJATHA "do eat," PIVATHA "do drink," JIGRATHA "do smell," MĀTIKRAMATHA "don't transgress [the commitments]," MAMA SARVA KĀRTĀYA "all my actions," SATSUKHAM "ultimate bliss," VISHUDDHAYE "completely pure," SAHĀYIKA "assistant," BHAVANTU "let it be done."

Even though gods and nagas are not [directly] mentioned among the classes of guests, it needs to be understood that they are implied. Offer to the groups of guests by reciting [the mantra] two or three times, together with limitless emanations of goddesses which spread from your heart and hold aloft a skull cup in their hands. By making inexhaustible offerings to the guests [the goddesses] please them with the bliss of undefiled bliss-emptiness. Imagine that [the goddesses] also perform the virtuous activities of pacifying obscurations to your meditation on the two stages.

Then supplicate and say the wishes and prayers to all the assemblies of gods and so forth once, and offer the torma in a clean place. The goddesses gather back into the heart and the guests return to their own abodes. Think that you are protected from all obstacles.

#### 2.3.1.4. Blessing the offering substances

#### 2.3.2.4.1. Needed vessels and offering substances

Fourth, for the *blessing of the [outer] offering substances*, first, the *Dorje Trengwa (Vajra Garland)* <sup>30</sup> tantra says about the *offering vessels and substances*:

न्यात्रात्राक्ष्में न्दा बह्यान्दा क्षेत्रा। यह्यायात्राक्षेत्रात्राह्मा व्यवस्यात्यात्राच्या क्षेत्राह्मा व्यवस्यात्रा क्षेत्रा क्षेत्र क्षेत्रा क्षेत्र क्

क्रूंस.पर्येट.जश्री

बे 'हॅग' नर्ग' स' सर से 'है।

ने नित्र विषा तथा नित्र प्रापान मानु

यार्षेव् नक्षेत्रं र पुर्वे नक्षेत्रं र न स्थे या। सर्के प्रस्पत्रे प्रप्ता

त्रायर। यर्त्वायक्षेत्र्या यर्त्वायक्ष्याय् । व्यायम् व्यायक्ष्याय् व्यायम् व्यायक्ष्यम् । व्यायम् व्यायक्षयम् । व्यायक्षयम्यक्षयम् । व्यायक्षयम् । व्यायक्षय

"Gold, silver, stone, copper and wood, made from earth, mother of pearl, conch shell, and the hollow of flower petals, [these] are the offering vessels for water for the face, incense, water for the feet, and drinking water."

There can be a different sequence for the four water [offerings]: here as taught in Sambhuta's tantra, the drinking water goes first: drinking water, water for washing the face, sprinkling water, and water for washing the feet, these are the four waters.

[Then] the Samovarodaya lists:

"flowers, incense, butter lamps, and scents in this way offer a feast,"

in this order. Also included among the offering substances are the seven substances of barley, milk, white flowers, kusha grass, sesame, popped rice, and scented water along with nectar. And the waters for the feet and so forth are clean and filled with sweet smell. Also the offerings should be excellent and attractive, arranged [according] to the number of deities [to whom they are offered] or whatever is available. The *Abhidhana* says:

"The offerings are set going counter-clockwise [from right to left]."

Thus in the self-generation the offerings are placed in front of you [starting] from the right going to the left, and the offerings to the field of accumulation or the frontal generation offerings and so forth have to go counter-clockwise from the perspective of the recipient [as well, so they go from your left to your right]. Also we can see [for those offerings to the front] that it is taught in some systems of the father tantras [symbolizing] method that the first of the offerings is on the right [of oneself], and in mother tantras [symbolizing] wisdom that the first offering is on the left [of oneself]. There are few exceptions to that, [but most are] similar. Our system is the one earlier described [of mother tantras offering right to left].

श्रूर्यते। स्वाय्य स्वायः द्वाय्य द्वायः द्वायः द्वायः स्वायः स्वयः स्यः स्वयः स्

अः क्र्यायः द्धुं व्ययः क्र्यायः यः त्या। अः क्र्यायः द्धुं व्ययः क्र्यायः यः त्या।

चलायकुर्यासक्ट्रास्त्र कुर्या कुर्या विश्वास्त्र क्ष्या विश्वास्त्र क्ष्या विश्वास्त्र क्ष्या क्ष्य क्ष्या क्ष्य क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्य क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क

#### 2.3.2.4.2. The method of cleansing and purification

After that [follows] the manner of blessings. Bhuwa Loden says:

"[The five nectars with the seed syllables] BI, MU, MA, RA, and SHU excellently purify and completely clear away all obstacles."

Sprinkle the inner offering, [recite] **OM KHANDAROHE HUNG HŪNG PHAT**, and visualize that innumerable Khandarohās from all the subtle particles in the nectar of the inner offering torma expel all obstructers.

Regarding purification, the SVABHĀVA mantra has the same meaning as before. Be mindful of its meaning as natural purity and collecting all perceived ordinary apparent phenomena into clear light.

Being completely mindful of these meanings of the two mantras of cleansing and purification means just that.

From the state of emptiness, from  $\bar{A}H$  [syllables] arise skull cup vessels, each with a  $H\bar{U}NG$  inside from which arises an offering substance having the nature of emptiness. Imagine that the essence of each of the [sense] offering substances has the ability and function to cause bliss in the [corresponding] sphere of experience of the six sense faculties of the deities. The *Tak Nyi (Two Parts Hevajra tantra, Mulatantraraja)*<sup>31</sup> says:

"Offer flowers and so forth accomplished from multiple HŪNG [syllables]."

The mantra **OM VAJRA ARGHAM ĀH HŪNG** means "Grant the blessings of body, speech, and mind to the vajra offering water." For all [of the offerings perform] the Pekor turning lotus mudra, [then for] drinking water the mudra of the open vajra palms;

similarly ĀÑCAMĀNAM, water for the face, with the left [hand] in the mudra of [bringing] the conch shell to the face, and the right [hand] palm down and clenched with joined thumb and fingers, and then unclenching the fingers one after another [starting] from the little finger [bringing the hand to the mouth like sprinkling the face];

बुधि. ६। चन्नर. वर्ष्ट्र विवा. की. वालू य. र्जर अंता वाल ना. की. वी. ने ना की. वर्ष्ट्र र. वर्ष्ट, व्हें वार्टर मृ'है। वनमानभेषा गर्षेत्रसूरासूरा गणमासन्नासहनामा पासूरत्वे से हेंगा त्रारम यदः मि शिःक्र्राममोत्रान्त्रीयायायय। यह्नाःस्यात्रयानेसानवितानम्यानदेः मी स्ट्री बे र्नेना यना नहिषातु स्तर हो र्नेना वर्षे र नवे हा इं. न् न्यार्श्वेश वनामहेशर्श्वेशम्प्रियायदे द्वारात्वे स्ताप्ति व ष्युःर्ये मे श्रूटः नामाया यना नहिमास हे निर्द्य स्त्री हिर्द्ध र निर्द्य है । माड्डे। दे क्या यमामहिशाचयार्से त्यूमाया द्वेरायदे रहेया वैं से है। वया नमा यना नहें मार्ने मार्ने मान्या वया नमा नमा नि गशुमाशुःस्टानबिदार्। श्रीदाशीमानक्षनमानदे । द्वारान्या।

स्या **श्रुप्तयादर्शे 'श्रेश्रयाप्त्रें 'श्रेश्रयाय्ये** श्रुप्तयाय्ये । श्रुप्तयाय्ये स्थाय्ये स्थाये स्

જ્ઞાન્યા ક્રેયા ક્રિયા ક્રેયા ક્રે

श्रम्भारत्वा मिट्टीया देटा। अट्टेंब स्क्री ही मी

श्रूचीशर्तु.जू.चा.श्रुंजाशालय.चाश्रंशाङ्ग्य.चें.चश्रा

[then] **PROKSHANAM**, sprinkling water, with the left hand in the same mudra as before and the right in the manner of sprinkling water with kusha grass;

**PĀDYAM**, water for the feet, with the left as before and the right with thumb and index finger like a pinching gesture in the mudra of picking a flower with fingers clenched and palm upwards and then starting from the index finger with the mudra of opening the fingers one after another; **PUSHPE**, flowers, with both hands clenched and then in the mudra of tossing flowers;

**D**HŪPE, incense, with both hands in the manner of burning incense [sticks, and the rest of the] fingers clenched and palm downward; **Ā**LOKE, illumination, with both hands clenched [forming a] bowl and the thumbs like a butter lamp [wick];

**GANDHE**, perfumed water, with both hands in the manner of anointing with the palms;

**N**ĒWIDYE, food offerings, with both hands in the mudra of vajra palms raising food offerings;

**SHAPTA**, music, bless with playing of damaru drum, bells, and so forth, whichever is available.

Bless all the offerings as having the nature of the three vajras [of body speech and mind].

#### 2.3.1.5. Refuge and bodhicitta

Fifth, *refuge and bodhicitta*: visualize the objects of refuge such as lamas, Buddhas, and bodhisattvas residing in the sky in front. Recite three times: "From now on I..." as stated in the *Vajradakini Tantra* and go for refuge.

[With] the six lines starting with "In the Buddha, Dharma, and Sangha..." as stated in the *Abhidhana* give rise to bodhicitta.

Reciting the four-line verse starting with "In order to benefit all sentient beings...," perform the preliminaries. Recite these [10 lines] together three times.

## **न्रॅशमावी स्वाप्त्रें र स्यापामाश्रम।** ने त्यावर ने वे प्याप्त त्यामान्त । न्रेर्शमावी।

८८.सू.सू.चश्रिश्वश

चयाःश्र्याश्चरचेत्रःश्चेत्रःश्चेत्रःश्चेत्रःश्चे।

याश्च श्वाद्यःश्चेत्रःश्चे

र्नेत्रः के अप्तर्राच्या व्याप्त । व्याप्त व्याप्त व्याप्त व्याप्त । व्याप्त व्याप्त व्याप्त व्याप्त व्याप्त । व्याप्त व्याप्त व्याप्त व्याप्त व्याप्त । व्याप्त व्यापत व्या

#### 2.3.2. The actual session with the branches and main practice

The actual session [which is the second] of the three aspects of yoga has [the two sections of] the branches [of yoga] and the main practice.

#### 2.3.2.1. The four yoga branches of the session

First the *branches of yoga*: after having *purified the three doors* [of body, speech, and mind] comes the meditation on the *Four Immeasurables*, *blessing the aggregates (skandhas), elements*, and *sense sources (ayatanas)*, the *meditation on the protection circle* to block unfavorable conditions, and the *gathering of accumulations* to stabilize favorable conditions.

## 2.3.2.1.1. The first yoga branch [purifying the three doors and the Four Immeasurables]

#### 2.3.2.1.1.1. Purifying the mind

In the first [branch of purifying] the three doors, in order to purify the mind, the meanings of the four letters taught in the *Künchö* (*All Conducts*) are:

"SHRĪ is 'non-dual wisdom,'
HE is 'empty of cause and so forth,'
RU is 'free from coming together,'
and KA is "not abiding anywhere.'

These four syllables have an excellent point, since we need to consider the mind at the beginning of the sadhana as it is also taught in the *Khandro Gyamtso (Ocean of Dakinis)*. To summarize their meaning here: **HE** means all phenomena are without a self from beginningless time. **RU** means there is no apprehension of a personal identity, nor identity of objects. **KA** means the wisdom of the perceiver is not abiding anywhere at all. And **SHRĪ** means that the perceiving subject and perceived object, the person and the phenomena and so forth are shown to be inseparable.

By abiding for a long time in the state of recognizing that all object properties and subjects are completely empty and self-luminous, the mind is purified. सुस्यन्त्राचर:ब्रेन्यदे। श्रेस्य उत्त्यक्ष्य प्रम्य व्याप्त व्यापत व्य

क्ष्यां क्ष्यां स्त्रां स्त्

चेश्वर्थ। वर्चरायश्चरत्वरायश्चरा धोरान्त्राचित्रः चित्रः वर्षे व

#### 2.3.2.1.1.2. Purifying the body

To purify the body, think with strong resolve: "As the cause of all the benefit and happiness of all sentient beings I am the glorious Heruka."

SHRĪ HERUKOH HANG. Attaching AHAM at the end of the four syllables [sounding "Oh Hang"],<sup>32</sup> the meaning becomes: "I am the Glorious Blood Drinker."

The mind which was earlier placed in emptiness is resting in the meaning of the four letters. [Contemplate:] "for the sake of sentient beings I myself am Heruka with blue complexion, one face and two hands together with the consort, complete with the ornaments and implements," and by meditating on instantly manifesting [like that] the body is purified.

#### 2.3.2.1.1.3. Purifying the speech

The way of *purifying the speech* is to recite the vowels and consonants OM A  $\bar{A}H$  and so on three times: the first time [visualize] a white garland of vowels and consonants around your navel, the second time inside that a red garland, the third time an innermost blue garland. All three are circling counterclockwise emitting five-colored light from which the deities of body, speech, and mind emanate. They leave through the right nostril and expel all obstructers of the three worlds, below, on, and above the ground. Again they return, enter through your left nostril and are absorbed into their respective mantra garland at the navel – visualize this.

Imagine that by reciting this all speech becomes the nature of the vowels and consonants. This is the way purifying the body is explained in the *Samvarodaya* and purifying speech and mind are explained in the *Künchö* (*All Conducts*).

## **ढ्य-अन्निव्यक्ष्र्यम्ब्ये व्याप्ति व्यापति व्याप्ति व्याप्ति व्याप्ति व्यापति व्**

न्त्र प्रम् न्यू प्रम् न्यू स्त्र म्यू स्त्र म्यू स्त्र स्त

ने प्यत्। रत्नी अहत ने शहे त्वे वा श्वा शहे ता विवा विवा विवा त्वा स्था त्वे ता त्व ता क्षा स्था त्वे ता स्था क

देवार्थानुवानी सेस्रयान्त्र म्हार्यात्र स्वाप्त में प्रत्य स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्व इत्य सेस्रय प्रत्य प्रत्य स्वाप्त स्वा

अकुट्रट्री विश्वश्वाचीश्वेश्वर्यास्त्रम् स्वर्यास्त्रम् स्वर्यास्त्रम् स्वर्यास्त्रम् स्वर्यास्त्रम् स्वर्यास्

#### 2.3.2.1.1.4. Meditation on the Four Immeasurables

After purifying the three doors [comes] the meditation on the *Four Immeasurables*. To expand on the meaning of: "The thought of benefiting others is loving kindness," and so on which come from the *Samvarodaya*:

The thought: "May all sentient beings have happiness and the causes of happiness," is loving kindness,

the thought: "May they be free from suffering and the causes of suffering which are wrong-doing," is compassion,

the thought: "How joyous if they have the perfect happiness which is free from suffering along with its causes!" is joy,

and the thought: "May the happiness of attachment only to one's friends, close ones, and so forth and the aversion towards somebody who is unfamiliar or resents one, become one and the same," is impartiality.

Meditate for a long time on equanimity towards all sentient beings of the six realms [with these thoughts] which are called the Four Immeasurables or Brahmaviharas (abodes of Brahma). The [Mahasiddha] Lawapa says the reason [for this] is: "If one gives rise to bodhicitta, all the roots of virtue will spread." This is the root of the aspirational resolve for awakening<sup>33</sup> and also the [way of] guarding the yogas.

#### 2.3.2.1.2. The second yoga branch [blessing the constituents]

The second branch of yoga with the blessing of the aggregates and so forth, has the three parts of the *aggregates*, *sense sources* and *elements*.

#### 2.3.2.1.2.1. Blessing the aggregates (skandhas)

First the *five aggregates*: the form aggregate is explained to mainly abide at the center of the head, directly in front of the bindu at the brow where bodhicitta resides. There, from a white **BUM** syllable melting into light arises white Vairochana holding a wheel with his right hand and so forth as explained in the text. Meditate on his nature being indivisible with the aggregate of form.

Similarly because the aggregate of feeling depends on heat it resides in the navel, and there, from a yellow **AM** syllable [arises] yellow (Vajra Sun) Vajrasūrya holding a jewel in his right hand.

द्यायार्ट्राह्यान्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त् यावयाम्पान्तात्त्रात्त्रेयाःक्षेत्राक्षेत्रात्त्र

वर्ने माश्रुसान्ती मार्षे दार्ने वानान्दर नरुषान्य स्थान् सुन्य याना स्वर्धेद स्था

इस्यास्य भी सामार्थ स्वार में सिन्द्रेत् श्री वार्या हेत् सी मात्र सिन्द्रेत सी सि

स्तः में खं के त्यान्य के विषय के त्या के त्य

त्ते.स्यक्ष्य्रस्याक्ष्यक्ष्यः द्वारम् हे.हे.तक्षर्यः योष्यः व्या । स्वारम्भित्रम् विष्यः स्वर्यः द्वारम् हे.हे.तक्षर्या योष्य्यः यम्प्रस्य विष्यः स्वर्यः विष्यः स्वर्यः स्व

## महिरामा ह्ये सके न द्वादी

श्चेनानिहराशुःक्षेन्त्रम् स्वानानिहर्मा निहर्मानिहर्मा निहर्मा निहर्मानिहरू । स्वराप्तिहरू

बुति सन्तर्भः त्यमः संभित्र विष्या वर्षे प्रक्षा विष्य स्वार्भ्या विष्य स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्व बुति सन्तर्भः त्यमः स्वार्थः स्वयाः स्वयः The aggregate of perception resides at the neck which is the path where the six consciousnesses move. There, from a red HRĪH syllable [arises] red (Lotus Lord of Dance) Padmanarteshvara holding a lotus in his right hand.

The mental factors of the aggregate of formation such as the six root kleshas and twenty secondary afflictions are supported by the winds. They reside below the ankles of the two feet. There, from a green HEH [arises] green (Vajra King) Vajrarāja raising a crossed vajra in his right hand.

All three are holding a bell playfully at their heart.

The support of the aggregate of consciousness is the life sustaining wind. It resides at the heart. There, from a white  $H\bar{U}NG$  [arises] white Vajrasattva with a vajra in his right hand and a bell in his left resting at his hip.

The general location of the five aggregates is the crown of the head. There, from a black HI [arises] black Heruka who is the essence of all Tathagathas. In his right hand is a vajra in the earth touching mudra and in his left a bell resting at the hip. His nature and form is Vajradhara but he manifests as Heruka or Akshobya.

The six deities all have one face, two hands, three eyes, their long hair is bound up at their crowns, and they are adorned with the five mudra [ornaments]. They face towards the front, sitting on a lotus and sun with their right leg stretched out. Clearly visualize all of them as the five Buddha families and the sixth Buddha, Vajradhara.

#### 2.3.2.1.2.2. Blessing the sense sources (ayatanas)

Second the *six sense sources*:

At both eyes, from a white **OM** [arises] white (Eliminator of Delusion) Mohavajra as described in the text.

Inside both ears, from a black **HŪNG** [arises] black (Eliminator of Anger) Dveshavajra.

In both nostrils, from yellow **TRĀM** [arises] yellow (Eliminator of Envy) Irshyāvajra.

On the tip of the tongue,<sup>34</sup> from red **AM** [arises] red (Eliminator of Attachment) Rāgavajra.

न्द्रायायम् । ते प्रायायम् । यो म्यायायम् । यो म्यायायम् । यो प्रायायम् । यो प्रायम् । यो प्रायायम् । यो प्राय

श्चर्यात्रास्त्रवाश्चर्या स्वाप्त्रवाहिष्याः स्वाप

### नश्रुसमा निस्रशस्त्रही

At the forehead, from green KHANG [arises] green (Eliminator of Miserliness) Mātsaryavajra.

This was taught in the *Abhidhana* and other [texts], and also the *Chi Thik* (*Drops of Spring*)<sup>35</sup> says:

"At the nostrils Irshyāvajra and at the forehead Mātsaryavajra are taught."

In other tantras they are switched but other than their names it is the same.

At the heart behind Vajrasattva, from white **HANG** [arises] white (Vajra Lord) Ishvaryavajra.

All of them have one face and two hands and hold their respective implement [of wheel, vajra, jewel, red lotus, crossed vajra, and vajra] in their right hand and a bell at the heart in the left. Meditate on their bodies as described in the text. They have three eyes, are adorned with the five mudra ornaments, their long hair is bound up at their crown, and they sit with their right leg stretched out. Meditate on this.

Even though there are two each of the physical eyes and so forth, it is taught that in terms of their identity it is correct to think of them as single [therefore there is no contradiction to have a single deity for the two eyes, etc.].

The seed syllables of these six [deities] are taught in the *Abhidhana* for the *protection circle*, but they are not clear in the original texts and commentaries. In other tantras [the deities] are taught as (Essence of Earth) Chitigarbha, Vajrapani, (Essence of Space) Akashagarbha, (Lord of the World) Lokeshvara, (Purifier of Hindrances) Viskambin, and Samantabhadra.

#### 2.3.2.1.2.3. Blessing the elements

Third are the *five elements* [of earth, water, fire, wind, and space]:\* At your navel, in front of Vajrasūrya on a small, square, yellow earth mandala from a yellow LāM [arises] yellow Pātanī (who Prevents Downfall) with one face and four arms, her upper right hand holding a wheel. She faces Vajrasūrya.

<sup>\*</sup> Note that these five elements are not the same as the 18 elements (dhatus) which are usually taught in the context of the skandhas and ayatanas.

श्रुट्यानः ह्रेन्यः श्रेश्यात्ते । स्वाद्यात्ता व्याह्रेन्यः श्रेश्यात्यः स्वाद्यात्यः व्याद्यात्यः व

येत्र स्तर्भात्त्र व्याप्त स्तर्भात्त्र स्त्र स

र्सलानर इस श्रूर में सर्व र्षा व्याहर श्रूर त्या श्रूर त्या श्रूर त्या श्रूर त्या व्याहर त्याहर त्या व्याहर त्या व्याहर त्याहर त्या व्याहर त्याहर त्या व्याहर त्या व्याहर त्या व्याहर त्या व्याहर त्याहर त्याहर

क्रियानिक्र स्थान्त्र स्यान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्य स्थान्त्र स्थान्य स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्यान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्य

At the heart, in front of Vajrasattva on a round, white water mandala from a black **MĀM** [arises] black (Lady of Death) Māranī, holding a Vajra in her upper right hand. She faces Vajrasattva.

At the neck, in front of Padmanarteshvara on a triangular fire mandala from **PĀM** [arises] red (Summoness) Ākarshanī holding a lotus in her upper right hand. She faces Padmanarteshvara.

At the forehead, in front of Vairochana on a green half-circle of the wind mandala from TĀM [arises] green (Lotus Lady of Dance)
Padmanarteshvarī holding a sword in her upper right hand. She faces Vairochana.

All four hold a cleaver knife in their lower right, a skull in their upper left and a Khatvānga in their lower left hands.

At the secret place, on a triangular, blue-black Dharmadhatu mandala from **KHAM** [arises] (Lotus Net) Padmajvālinī with three faces and six arms as described in the text – meditate on this.

All five [deities] are naked, with free-flowing hair and three eyes, adorned with the five mudras, sitting with their right legs outstretched.

It is also said that of these five [deities] four are called (Lady of Eyes) Lochana, and so forth [Mamaki, Pandarava, and Tara], and [the fifth] is Dharmadhatuvajra.

In this way you need to meditate on these deities of the aggregates, sense sources, and elements as the inseparable identity of your own aggregates, sense sources, and elements.

The Künchö (All Conducts) says:

"Generate the pride of the deities of the aggregates, sense sources, and elements in this way."

So you should not merely establish the seventeen deities, but also together with the deities develop their pride.

ल्य. में क्रिंच वीट. जन्ना त्यासाट्यू । ज्यासाट ज्यासाय क्रिंट क्ष्याचीया । पट्टी स्थान स्टान क्ष्या क्ष्य

वेशमाश्चरम् नद्यानश्चरम्बर्धा स्राम्भः स्रामः स्राम्भः स्रामः स्र

र-[२]न्यानश्चरानान्ता वर्षेत्रायान्यायाः व्यान्यायाः व्यान्यायाः

The mantra **OM PRAKRĪTA** and so on appears in the *Abhidhana* and the *Phagmo Ngönjung (Manifestation of Varahi)* and its meaning is: **OM** leads the mantra, **PRAKRĪTA** "nature," **PARISHUDDHĀH** "completely pure," **SARVA DHARMĀH** "all phenomena," **PRAKRĪTA** "nature," **PARISHUDDHOH** "completely pure," **AHAM** "I am." "All phenomena are completely pure by nature, I am completely pure by nature." Recite it together with the mudra of the turning lotus. At this time you have [the form of] a single Heruka with two arms. The *Samvarodaya* says:

"Practice two-armed Heruka and develop the pride of the aggregates and so forth."

This is also explained as being the protection of oneself.

### 2.3.2.1.3. The third yoga branch [protection circle]

The third branch of yoga is the *meditation on the protection circle*.

### 2.3.2.1.3.1. General explanation on the meditation of the protection circle

Although the common protection circle such as the vajra fence, tent, and so forth, and the extensive circle of meditating on the uncommon ten wrathful deities stabbing the dagger are explained in the root and explanation tantras, here the meditation on the ten wrathful deities is not explained, but rather the middle length [meditation] is taught.

### 2.3.2.1.3.2. Specific explanation on the meditation of the protection circle

This has two sections of the *protection circle* and the *stabbing of the obstructers with the dagger*.

### 2.3.2.1.3.2.1. The protection circle of the vajra fence

With the pride of your own body as Heruka with the residing 17 deities of the aggregates, elements, and sense sources, snap the thumb and fingers of the left hand towards the east.

By saying **OM SUMBHA NISUMBHA HUNG HŪNG PHAT** this mantra appears in the eastern direction in black color as a string of huge forms of Tibetan printed capital letters reaching up high. [Then] visualize going counter-clockwise:

म् निक्षित्र विक्षित्र वि

ૹક્.ય.જ્દન્ય.તાવુ.તાદુવાલું ત્યાં કુતા. કુતા. ક્યા. જ્યા. ત્યા. જે ત્યા. ત્યા. ત્યા. જે ત્યા. ત્યા.

यर्ट्ट-प्रमुचीश्वानः त्यान्तः विदः देः त्येचीः स्थाः हैं से स्थाः विद्यान्य स्थाः विदः त्यान्य स्थाः विदः त्या विद्यान्य स्थाः विद्यान्य स्थाः विदः त्याः विद्याः स्थाः स्था

शक्त्रकाश्चार्त्र, हुतु : श्वार्च : श्वेर : श्वेर : त्र्येर : त्र्ये : श्वेर : त्र्ये : त्ये : त्र्ये : त्र्ये : त्र्ये : त्र्ये : त्र्ये : त्र्ये : त्र्ये

In the same way, snapping your fingers towards the north [say] OM GRĪHANA GRĪHANA HUNG HŪNG PHAT and in the north [appears] the green mantra. With OM GRĪHNĀPAYA GRĪHNĀPAYA HUNG HŪNG PHAT in the west is the red mantra, and with OM ĀNAYAHOH BHAGAVĀN HUNG HŪNG PHAT in the south is the mantra in yellow color. The forms of the mantras are huge, filling [the entire space] reaching from the Brahma heaven on top down to the golden ground below, and they radiate light, each in their respective color. All enemies and obstructers are defeated, and the light is collected back and absorbed into the mantras.

A square vajra fence with a blue five-pointed vajra in the east, green five-pointed vajras in the north, red in the west and yellow in the south intertwined together, forms a huge and vast wall which reaches from the abode of the sublime Brahma down to the golden ground.

Together with this from a HŪNG below [arises a huge] crossed vajra with a blue square at the navel and its prongs black in the east, green in the north, red in the west and yellow in the south. A HŪNG syllable manifests standing up at the navel. From its light radiating downwards vajras of various colors and sizes [arise, forming] an impermeable ground the nature of vajras.

The light radiates upwards and forms a square vajra fence. Outside, above, and on all sides [the space] is filled with five-pronged vajras with separated prongs at their tips [like] arrows with pointed tips, crisscrossing and flashing above, below, and in all cardinal and intermediate directions, [so that] any of the demons and obstructers that [swirl around] like a blizzard, are pierced deeply and won't be able to [come] close.

Inside of that is a vajra enclosure and an equally vast vajra tent and so forth, it's four sides becoming thinner and thinner towards the tip like the top of a tent. It has a vajra at its peak [and consists of] many large and small vajras joined together. Between the tent and enclosure is a vajra canopy raised as if on daggers [pointing up].

दे.वश्वश्वर्यं स्ट्रास्त्र स्ट्रास्त्र स्ट्रास्त्र स्ट्रास्त्र स्ट्रास्त्र स्ट्रास्त्र स्ट्रास्त्र स्ट्रास्त्र स्ट्रिस्त्र स्ट्रास्त्र स्

स्वयात्र स्वयात्य स्वयात्र स्वयात्र स्वयात्र स्वयात्र स्वयात्र स्वयात्र स्वयात्र स्वयात्र स्वयात्य स्

यविष्यत्यीयोश्वास्त्र स्थाप्तास्त्र स्थाप्तास्य स्थापतास्य स्यापतास्य स्थापतास्य स्यापतास्य स्थापतास्य स्यापतास्य स्थापतास्य स्य स्थापतास्य स्यापतास्य स्थापतास्य स्थापतास्य स्य स्यापतास्य स्य

While when looking at all this [although] the nature of the large and small vajras is clear and distinct and solid to the touch, it becomes a single vajra nature without seams and gaps, like touching the plastered surface of a painted picture.

Coming from the powerful mass of fire of the five wisdoms again light radiates spreading far, and 64 [bands of light] blazing in white, yellow, red, green, and blue color circle [the mandala] counter-clockwise. If evil forces cannot even bear to look at it with their eyes, how could they create obstructions – think and meditate in this way, and bless each [of the parts of the protection circle] with their respective mantra which mean: OM MEDINĪ "the ground," VAJRI BHAVA "nature of vajras," VAJRA BHANDHA HŪNG "bound by vajras." OM VAJRA PRĀKĀRA HŪNG PAM HŪNG "vajra fence," OM VAJRA PAÑCARA HŪNG BAM (or SAM) HŪNG "vajra tent," OM VAJRA VITĀNA HŪNG KHANG HŪNG "vajra canopy," and OM VAJRA SHARA JĀLA TRAM SAM TRAM "vajra net of arrows." These are the blessing mantras.

In HŪNG PAM HŪNG and so forth there is the first letter of the name [i.e. PA for PRĀKĀRA] adorned with a Bindu drop. [In the case of] PRĀKĀRA and PAÑCARA it is their first letter, for KHANG it is a term meaning "space" [since the canopy is up above], and for SHARA JĀLA, since "Sha" and "Sa" have a similar sound family it is "Sa." These [syllables] form [the mantra] and this is the meaning of their blessing. OM VAJRA JVĀLA "blazing," ANALĀ "fire," and ARKA "sun," [is] "Vajra fire blazing like the sun," and HŪNG HŪNG HŪNG is the blessing of the fire. All six parts of the mantra come from the *Abhidhana* and are taught to protect the place.

### 2.3.2.1.3.2.2. Stabbing the obstructers with the dagger

The second [section] of *stabbing the obstructers with the dagger* has two parts, the first part is *generating the wrathful goddesses* who are said to summon obstructers and then *stab the subdued obstructers with the dagger*.

न्दः विक्रा विक्रा निक्री विक्रा के स्था के स

न्त्रा श्री श्री श्री व्यापित विश्वा क्षेत्र विश्वा कष्टि क्षेत्र विश्वा क्षेत्र विश्वा कष्ट विश्वा क्षेत्र विश्वा कष्ट विश्व

ने निवेद के खुःद प्या के स्वा के स्व के स्व

योत्रेवः हे स्रके न्यासान्यम् नेयम् वर्षे वीष्ट्रः स्वासाः स्वासाः स्वासाः स्वासाः स्वासाः स्वासाः स्वासाः स्व स्वास्त्रे स्वासाः स्वासाः नेयम् वर्षे वीष्ट्रः स्वासाः स्वासाः स्वासाः स्वासाः स्वासाः स्वासाः स्वासाः स्वास

अ.चीलभ.किट.। चालूच.कू.च। खू.चीट्ट.जूचभ.किट.ची.टेट.। खू.शिक्रें.वु.जूचभ.कूच.चू.जम। चेट.केट.टी.चीलुच.हु.वहू अ.

यक्ष्यभाग्यायभान्हें न्यान्ता व्यापिक्षण्य स्वाप्ता स्वापता स्वाप्ता स्वापता स्वाप

### 2.3.2.1.3.2.2.1. Generating the wrathful goddesses to summon obstructers

First to generate the wrathful goddesses [say] **OM SUMBHA** and so on, and with each of the mantra parts snap your fingers counterclockwise towards each direction. Atisha's commentary explains that we need to visualize the male and female wrathful deities between the vajra fence and ring of fire.

Visualize that from the mantras manifest black (Crow-faced) Kākāsyā both in the east and the direction above, green (Owl-faced) Ulūkāsyā in the north, red (Dog-faced) Shvānāsyā in the west and the direction below, and yellow (Sow-faced) Sūkarāsyā in the south.

Again, towards the south-east say **OM SUMBHA**... which is the first [eastern] part of the mantra and blue, and **OM ĀNAYAHO**... which is the fourth [southern] part and yellow, and snap your fingers twice: in the south-east [arises] Yamadādhi whose right side is blue and left side yellow.

In the same way [turning clockwise] say the fourth part of the mantra OM ĀNAYAHO... which is yellow, and the third part OM GRĪHANĀPAYA... which is red, [i.e. the southern and western mantras] along with snapping the fingers twice: in the south-west [arises] Yamadūti whose right side is yellow and left red.

Say both **OM GRĪHANĀPAYA** ... which is red and **OM GRĪHNA**... which is green: in the north-west [arises] Yamadamshtrinī whose right is red and left is green.

From the green OM GRĪHNA... and the blue OM SUMBHA... in the northeast [arises] Yamamathanī whose right side is green and left blue.

Together with saying all eight mantras the forms [of the eight deities] are completed counterclockwise in the cardinal- and clockwise in the inter-cardinal directions: visualize (the goddesses) with one face and two hands and below the navel in the form of a single pointed vajra. They hold a vajra hammer in their right hand and in their left a goddess similar to themselves with a dagger-shaped lower body.



युर्द्धम् अः अः इस्य विद्याः अः अः अः द्यायाः यद्यः अः अः द्यायाः विद्याः अः विद्याः विद्याः अः विद्याः अति विद्याः अति विद्याः अति विद्याः विद्याः अति विद्याः अति विद्याः वि

 $\frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{2} - \frac{$ 

देव द्राप्तवीयाश्वर्षश्रम् स्रम् र्से रावड्या प्रमायम् स्राप्ता श्रुष्य प्रदे शि से स्रम् श्रुष्य प्रविदे शि स

महैशमहै। रदःश्वदःविदःश्चे द्वश्वः व्याप्तः वर्षे द्वः व्याप्तः वर्षे वर्ये वर्षे वर

है। इ.संश्याचितान्त्रीयः श्रीयान्त्रीयान्त्रीयान्त्रीयान्त्रीयान्त्रीयान्त्रीयान्त्रीयान्त्रीयान्त्रीयान्त्रीयान्त्र इ.संश्याचितान्त्रीयान्त्रीयान्त्रीयान्त्रीयान्त्रीयान्त्रीयान्त्रीयान्त्रीयान्त्रीयान्त्रीयान्त्रीयान्त्रीयान्त

नेते स्वार नेत्ति । कें ते। स्र स्र । स्या वार्य नित्ति । कें ते । स्र स्र । स्या वार्य । व्या वार्य । व्या

Even though the later set of the mantras [for the intermediate directions] are taught in our tradition to be said twice without mixing them [i.e. OM SUMBHA... twice, etc.], I think in our visualization we need to go clockwise in the intermediate directions [and mix them, i.e. OM SUMBHA... and OM ĀNAYAHO... to the right front, then OM ĀNAYAHO... and OM GRĪHANĀPAYA ... to the right back, etc.].

From [the goddesses] many emanations like themselves radiate into the eight directions, and from the eastern wrathful goddess [they emanate] above and from the western goddess below. The powerful chief obstructers of the ten directions and so forth are caught by hooks coming from the hearts of the guardians of the ten directions. When [the chief obstructers] are bound by a noose around their necks and pulled in, also their surrounding retinue follows them helplessly to the vajra fence.

By saying HŪNG four times, the ten female guardians visualized earlier [create] eight deep wells [in the cardinal and inter-cardinal directions] outside behind the vajra fence, and adding two more wells outside in the east and west to place the obstructers from above and below in, it becomes ten [wells]. The wells appear like deep triangular pits.

Visualize that all the obstructers are individually put inside them, and all the emanated wrathful goddesses dissolve back into the goddesses from which they appeared.

2.3.2.1.3.2.2.2. Stabbing the obstructers with the dagger

### 2.3.2.1.3.2.2.2.1. Stabbing the dagger into the crown of the obstructers

Second, visualize yourself at the center of the protection circle with the firm pride [of the deity] commanding the wrathful goddesses: "strike with the dagger!" and they stab the dagger into the crown of the head of the obstructers clockwise in the cardinal and counter-clockwise in the inter-cardinal directions.

It is also taught to recite **OM GHA GHĀ GHĀ TAYA**... three times. The first time the goddesses of the intermediate directions turn outwards and stab the purba into the crown of the head of the obstructers.

In terms of the meaning of the mantra, **OM** means the same as before, **GHA GHA** "[you] slayer" calls them, and the two **GHĀTAYA** command them to "subdue!"

यहं.ग्री.ज.ला ह्.हं.स्ट.श.च्या श्राह्म. संस्थात्र । वहं.ग्री.ज.ला ह्रंहं.संट.श.च्या श्राह्म. संस्थात्र । व्याच्यात्र प्राह्म. संस्थात्र प्राच्यात्र प्राह्म. संस्थात्र प्राह्म. संस्थात्र प्राह्म. संस्थात्र प्राह्म. संस्थात्र प्राह्म प्र

यहं इं र्र्र्स् अहूं शप्प है। हैं हे प्रकट वी यगित हें इं ले श्राया है। रट हे र गा हैं हे प्रकट

या नहं में क्या हैं हे स्ट्रिं तुर् तुर तुर व्या हैं वत् है। यूर पर न्यू पर निर्मा हें हा सुर प्राप्त निर्मा स्टर्

नवोवाराञ्चवाःसःहसराञ्चार्से हसराञ्चेरानेन्द्रम् कुरानेन्द्रम्

Regarding who is being subdued: SARVA "all," DUSHTĀN "evil doers," VIGHNĀN "obstructers," and HŪNG PHAT is the seed syllable that manifests the command.

Twice Kīlaya "strike the hammer on the dagger!"

SARVA PĀPĀM "all (those with) harmful thoughts," HŪNG is the seed, and PHAT "eliminate!"

Three times HŪNG "invoke suchness!"

**VAJRAKĪLAYA** calls "Vajra Dagger," **VAJRADHARA ĀJÑAPAYATI** "listen to Vajradhara's command!" Through Vajradhara's blessing, you as Heruka issue the command.

SARVA DUSHTĀN VIGHNAN "all evil obstructers," KĀYA VĀK CITTA "their body, speech, and mind, all three," VAJRAKĪLAYA "Vajra Dagger strike!" And HŪNG PHAT is again the command.

Even though the mantra which is mentioned in all tantras such as the *Abhidhana* often differs slightly, [I think] it should be written as in the translation of the *Abhidhana* by Mardo Lotsawa and Chag Lotsawa.

When saying the mantra you should imagine that by striking the purba with the vajra hammer on the head, the very sharp point of the dagger impales the obstructers from the crown of the head until the soles of the feet.

The meaning of the mantra is: VAJRA MUDGARA "vajra hammer," VAJRAKĪLAYA "Vajra Purba," ĀKOTAYA "strike!" HŪNG PHAT, by striking and stabbing the obstructers with the dagger they are established in one taste with the great bliss of suchness.

The remaining obstructers are chased by the goddesses and expelled far away.

राम्याक्षे ।

यम्यायाक्षे ।

यम्यावक्षे ।

यम्यायाक्षे ।

यम्याया

युःचदः श्रुणः स्वर्याः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः

The goddesses come back and dissolve into the vajra fence, and three fences of blue vajras, red lotuses outside of that, and spinning blades outside of that appear like droplets splashing when water hits water or like sparks flying when hitting a flint-stone, forming all together one mass without gaps. They are of one piece, and from their light powerful vajra fire is produced outside, [radiating] in 64 bands beginning with white, then yellow, red, green, and blue turning counter-clockwise, turbulently blazing above, below, and in all cardinal and intermediate directions. Because it becomes one with the fire that was visualized earlier, imagine that from this time until all beings attain the state of Heruka the obstructers and hindrances cannot cause harm, and it is important that [your] mind embraces bodhicitta.

The blessing mantras are OM VAJRA PRAKĀRA HŪNG, OM PADMA PRAKĀRA HŪNG, and OM CAKRA PRAKĀRA HŪNG. The previous explanation of the fire blessing mantras also applies here. [And] in other words Ghantapa's *Sadhana of the Wishfulfilling Jewel* says:

"Being stabbed with the purba which is hit by the hammer, the obstructers become perfectly enlightened. From the goddesses gathering and turning into radiating light [arises] the fire of vajras, lotuses, and wheels."

This is how VAJRA PRAKĀRA... is explained, and [I think] the meaning of the OM VAJRA JVALA ANALĀRKA HŪNG HŪNG HŪNG fire mantra during the protection circle, which was not explained, is the same.

सर्देव नहें दायश

म्रि.म्.सम्भाग्रीमास्त्रात्तेनमा

यश्रिरश्यम् । वित्वार्ट्र र्श्वयाश्ची पर्ने यश्चार्थ रहे श्वर्ष स्थान् । हें र्वे हे र वे वे व

मिं ने स्याक्तयाया स्वायाया

र्भे '८८' अवद'षे 'अळंअअ' द्रअअ' शु

श्रुःर्क्षेत्रायायन्यायवे प्रमया उत्रामीया

शेसशरुदार्देदायान हैं दासरासहिता

देशत्म क्रि.मू.च.व्यक्ष्यभावीट.ज.वीट.वर्तेज.टी.वि.वार्ट्रट.क्र्याभाववीट.क्रियार्ट्रट.क्र्याभाववीट.क्रियार्ट्रट.क्र्याभाववीट.क्र्याच्याव्यक्षयाच्याव्यक्षयाच्यक्षयच्यक्षयाच्यक्षयाच्यक्षयाच्यक्षयाच्यक्षयच्यक्यवच्यक्षयच्यक्षयच्यक्षयच्यक्षयच्यक्षयच्यक्षयच्यक्षयच्यक्षयच्यक्षयच्यक्षयच्यक्षयच्यक्षयच्यक्षयच्यक्षयच्यक्षयच्यक्षयच्यक्यक्षयच्यक्षयच्यक्षयच्यक्यवच्यक्यवच्यक्षयच्यक्षयच्यक्यक्षयच्यक्षयच्यक्षयच्यक्यक्यवच्यक्यक्यवच्यक्यक्यवच्यक्यक्षयच्यक्यक्यवच्यक्षयच्यक्यक

कु.स्.इ.वु.च्.चु.स्। ह्र.इ.स्.चयु.च्युयायत्व्या। ह्र.इ.स्.स्य.चयु.च्युयायत्व्या। स्र.इ.स्.चयु.च्युयायत्व्या। स्र.च्युयःच्युयःच्युयायत्व्या। स्र.च्युयःच्युयःच्युयायव्याव्यायःच्युः।। स्र.च्युयःच्युयःच्युयायव्याव्यायःच्युः।। The Abhidhana says:

"the wrathful deities strike the purba,"

and if you wonder whether it is appropriate that Kākāsyā and so forth strike [with the dagger], Atisha's commentary says:

"The wrathful deities, Namgyal (Completely Victorious) and so forth, strive to benefit sentient beings

in the cardinal and intermediate directions with all kinds of skillful methods for taming."

Therefore is taught that the ten wrathful deities emanate as (Crow-faced) Kākāsyā and so forth, [to do] whatever is necessary to tame and command the obstructers.

There are many different versions of the four mantras of the four [animal-]faced goddesses: some of the translations by Lochen say: **BHAGAVĀN VIDHYĀRĀJA**, in the translation of Mardo Lotsawa and Chag Lotsawa it is **VAJRARĀJA**, in the *Abhidhana* and *Phagmo Ngönjung* (*Manifestation of Varahi*) it is **VAJRA HUNG HŪNG PHAT**, and since this matches most with the collection of mantras used in the root tantra, I think this is what [should be] used here in this sadhana. But it is also clear that there is no contradiction with all other versions [of the mantras] since they are not incorrect.

### 2.3.2.1.3.2.2.2. Meditating on Vajrasattva to purify the two obscurations

Although in Indian texts the recitation and meditation of Vajrasattva is not taught, it is also good to do this here since it follows earlier texts of Tibetan realized masters. The *Nyingpo Gyen* (*Heart Ornament*) says:

"Single embodiment of all Buddhas abiding in the center of a white lotus and moon [disk], adorned with ornaments of vajra and bell, visualize Vajrasattva properly, and in accordance with the ritual of the 100 syllable mantra, recite each [mantra] twenty one times.

द्यास्त्रम्त्रास्त्रे त्यन्ताः कृत्तः स्त्राम्यः त्यास्त्रम्याः स्त्रे त्यास्त्रम्यः स्त्रम्यः स्त्रे त्यास्त्रम्यः स्त्रम्यः स्त्रे त्यास्त्रम्यः स्त्रे त्यास्त्रम्यः स्त्रम्यः स्त्रम

याद्भीत्राचा त्रिक्ष विष्या स्त्राच्या । स्त्रिक्ष त्रिक्ष त्राच्या त्रिक्ष त्राच्या त्रिक्ष त्राच्या । स्त्रिक्ष त्राच्या त्राच

र्ट्स.चैय.वश्त्र.द्र्याच्यात्म.व्ह्या त्यात्म.प्रे.यट्या.कुट्-ट्र्स.चीय.त्र्ट्री। त्या.चे.यची.सद्य.यात्मट.र्ज्यात्म.यञ्जी विष्य.स.य्शी क्र्या.स.ट्येस.ट्र.सवर.वीय.स्थी

)र्ह्मवार्श्वी, तस्त्राच्यात्र स्त्राच्यां कुर्यं क्षेत्र स्वया हुर्यं स्त्राच्या हुर्यं स्त्राच्या हुर्यं स्वया स्त्राच्या स्त्राच स्त्राच्या स्त्राच स्त्राच्या स्त्राच्या स्त्राच्या स्त्राच स्त्रच स्त्रच स्त्रच स्त्रच स्त्रच स्त्रच स्त्रच स्त्रच स्त्रच स्त्

By transforming downfall [through confession and] blessings, it will not spread.

Because the supreme accomplished ones taught thus, practice in the breaks between sessions. If having recited 100,000 times,

[one] will become completely pure in nature."

As it is taught here, we need to recite in the break between sessions and in order to purify the two obscurations [of afflictive emotions and knowledge obscurations] here this is also taught [after] the meditation on the protection circle and before gathering the accumulations.

This way is also [explained] in the 25th chapter of the *Abhidhana*:

"In the beginning, in the middle, and at the end, recite the 100-syllable secret mantra."

And also:

"If oneself wishes for accomplishments, all accomplishments exist [in the 100-syllable mantra]."

Through the complete transformation of the syllable **PAM** on the crown of your head [arises] a lotus and moon disk and so on, the description in the text is easy to understand.

Even though in thangkas [Heruka's] legs are painted in the striding stance, during [this] meditation visualize that his feet are standing evenly together with their soles firmly on the Brahma opening of your head.

At his heart is a moon disk which is turned upside-down\* and in its center is a white HŪNG syllable, shiny like quicksilver and planted on the seat like a needle. Around the edge a white garland of the 100-syllable mantra turns clockwise, radiating light which purifies the misdeeds and obscurations of all sentient beings of the six realms and makes offerings to all the lamas, Buddhas, and bodhisattvas. The blessings are gathered and by their dissolving into the mantra garland, nectar streams down from the HŪNG and the mantra garland and fills Heruka's body.

<sup>\*</sup> According to Buddhist cosmology, when we are looking up at the moon we see its underside which radiates light. So the bright moon disk which is the seat of the deity is the underside of the moon.

स्वीकान्त्री।

क्षित्राच्यात्राच्याः विकार्यकात्राच्याः विकार्यकात्राच्याः विकार्यकाः व

रालुश्री श्रूचीशक्त्वीस्ट्रीतः कुचीश्वर्याः स्वित्राक्ष्यां यर्वावुः सुन्ध्राक्ष्यां स्वर्वाक्ष्यां स्वर्वाक्ष्यां स्वर्वाक्ष्यां स्वर्वाक्ष्यां स्वर्वाक्ष्यां स्वर्वाक्ष्यां स्वर्वाक्ष्यां स्वर्वाक्ष्यां स्वर्वाक्षयः स्वर्वतः स्वर्व

ने हे हे कें कें अंदे नुश्वा

देशःसरः द्रेशः युनः उदः दुः दशुर।

वेशनाश्चरशक्ता हेर्नाविष्वयादशहिंद्रश्चेश्चेनाःश्चेनःद्वार्मे वेशनाद्यरान्धेद्वत्वशः

The nectar emerges from the place of union and the soles of the feet and flows down. The two obscurations which you have gathered since beginningless time along with propensities, all melt like dew hit by sun rays and come out through the lower orifice, toenails, and pores of the skin on the soles of the feet. [Your] whole body is filled with the nectar of stainless wisdom – meditate that the experience of extraordinary blissemptiness arises in body and mind. As stated in a tantra, Heruka's 100 syllable mantra should be recited eight or 21 times, with the clarity [of the voice] not diminishing.

The mantra meaning: OM is the seed of the vajra body, VAJRA HERUKA "Vajra Blood Drinker," SAMAYAM "commitments," ANU PĀLAYA "keep accordingly," HERUKA TVENOPA TISHTA "Heruka, stay close to me," DRIDHO ME BHAVA "stay firm in me," SUTO SHYO ME BHAVA "[satisfy me and] make me happy," ANU RAKTO ME BHAVA "love me passionately," SUPO SHYO ME BHAVA "be very happy about me," SARVA SIDDHIM "all accomplishments," ME PRAYATSA "bestow upon me completely," SARVA KARMA SUCHA "and in all actions," ME CHITTAM SHRĪYAH "may my mind be excellently virtuous," KURU "make it so!" HŪNG is the seed syllable of the vajra mind, HA HA HA HA HOH "nature of the five wisdoms," BHAGAVĀN "Conquerer," VAJRA HERUKA MA ME MUÑCA "Vajra Blood Drinker don't forsake me," HERUKOH BHAVA "nature of the Blood Drinker" MAHĀ SAMAYA SATTVA "great hero of samaya commitment," ĀH the seed syllable of vajra speech, HŪNG PHAT. Arousing commitment from the heart recite once completely without [unnecessary] repetition.

Then say "I, deluded by ignorance" and so on which are the words of confession taught in the 26<sup>th</sup> chapter of the *Abhidhana*. If you recite the six lines one-pointedly, the same text says:

"If one doesn't doubt this, one is certain to become accomplished."

Heruka responds: "Your misdeeds and obscurations are purified." Imagine that after granting consent, Heruka dissolves into you.

द्याप्तर्चे राष्ट्री प्यत्राप्यता प्रविष्ठा । अत्रुव् क्रिया यहेव प्यति खेर के व्यव्या । व्यव्या विष्ठा विष्ठा विष्ठा विष्ठा । व्यव्या विष्ठा विष्रा विष्ठा विष्रा विष्ठा विष्ठा विष्ठा विष्ठा विष्ठा विष्ठा विष्ठा विष्ठा विष्ठा

द्रम्य्। क्ष्म्याक्षेत्रम्ये। श्रुट्याक्षेत्रम्ये। श्रुट्याक्षेत्रम्ये।

$$\begin{split} & = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left[ \frac{1}{2} \left$$

द्राधिनान् । त्यान् व्यान्य व्यान्य

### 2.3.2.1.4. The fourth yoga branch [gathering accumulations]

The *fourth yoga branch*, is the *gathering of the accumulations* to stabilize the requisite conditions, which has the parts of the *accumulation of merit* and the *accumulation of wisdom*.

### 2.3.2.1.4.1 Generating the field of accumulation of merit

First *generating the field of accumulation of merit*: it is taught that in the center of the protection mandala your own body [appears] in the form of Heruka like a polished crystal ball. As the dependent [cause] of purification of all your misdeeds and obscurations, visualize it as transparent like a vase of blue crystal. The body complexion is not visualized as white, but as deep azure blue color representing the changeless immutable Dharmadhatu.

At the heart in the center of a sun disk visualize a blue HŪNG. [Even though] it is taught in the *Vajradakini* tantra that the seat of the HŪNG is a moon disk here and although Lawapa, Prajñārakshita and so forth taught that a moon seat would be correct, since the HŪNG syllable is the origin of Vajradhara, this is not always the case. As explained in the *Abhidhana* and *Khandro Gyamtso* (*Ocean of Dakinis*) a sun seat is also mentioned here.

The *Abhidhana* and the texts of the venerable Ghantapa also teach that the **HŪNG** syllable has the nature of the five wisdoms. Abhyakara said about the way of meditating on the five wisdoms: "The **U** vowel is Amoghasiddhi, the body of the **HA** is Amitabha, its head is Ratnasambhava, the half moon is Vairocana, and the drop along with the nada is Akshobya." This is how the teaching should be understood.

The HŪNG syllable is clear sky-blue with a blue center and being a little lighter around the edges. It emits five colored light which purifies the misdeeds and obscurations of your body and speech. Coming out of the pores of the skin, the light shines forth and invites the fields of accumulation. Visualize as described in the short and extensive texts of the system of Ghantapa.

Even though it is taught that the light is absorbed into the forehead, Lawapa explained that here it is absorbed into the heart.

द्वारा स्वारा स

चश्चरायाः भ्रात्वर्षे व्याप्तः भ्रात्वर्षः व्याप्तः व्यापतः व्याप

सन्नतः क्षे | ट्रे.चीय-ततु .याचु .क्यांशाचु शत्ततृ ।।

यश्चांश्चर्यत्व .क्ष्मेश्वेशाचिर .यंद्र .यंद्र यंद्र यंद्र .यंद्र .यंद्र

Invite the lama from whom you received the four empowerments of Chakrasamvara and who is the central figure in the field of accumulations, and the yidam Chakrasamvara and so forth, and the limitless Buddhas and bodhisattvas as taught in the *Abhidhana*. Ghantapa's *Drubtab Yishin Norbu* (*Sadhana of the Wishgranting Jewel*) explains how to accumulate the merit with the field of accumulation:

"The lama and the deities of the mandala, all the Buddhas, bodhisattvas and so forth fill the entire sky in front: looking up, [you and] multitudes of beings prostrate and offer for the benefit of beings: forms, sounds, fragrance, taste and so forth arising from the light of the HŪNG.
Thus accumulate vast merit!"

Then [recite]: "[I bow to] the lama who is kind" and so on which comes from the *Künchö* (*All Conducts*) and: "[I bow to] the great hero glorious Heruka" and so on which is cited from the *Samvarodarya*, with these two verses worship the deities of the mandala.

Again visualize that goddesses arise from the seed syllable at the heart and make offerings.

Even though the [offerings of] drinking water and so forth are not in the root text and commentaries, it is explained in some Indian and Tibetan scriptures that here with OM SHRĪ HERUKA SAPARIWĀRA ARGHAM PRATĪCCA SVĀHĀ and so on one offers the two or three waters mentioned in the Indian scriptures. The meaning of the mantra is: OM SHRĪ HERUKA "glorious Blood Drinker," SAPARIWĀRA "along with retinue," and if three [offering] waters are counted they are ARGHAM "drinking water," AÑCAMĀNAM "water to wash the face," and PĀDYAM "water to wash the feet," and if the face (or foot) water are omitted we can also speak about two waters, PRATĪCCA "please accept each one," and SVĀHĀ is the end of the mantra which stabilizes the accomplishments.

वेश क्षे.यहं.यहे.स.ट्रेक्ट.बे.टी ज्यायाज्ञेयाययस्य व्यायम् वर्षाः वर्षा

क्षेर्य हिट्स्य विश्व स्ट्रिस्य स्ट्र

याञ्चनाश्वास्त्रान्त्रान्त्रात्त्रात्त्र्याः क्रिंशात्त्र्याः स्वास्त्रात्त्र्याः स्वास्त्रात्त्र्याः स्वास्त्र स्वास्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त् स्वास्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त The sense offerings until "music" are done in conjunction with the mantras above. Lanka Gyelsang explained the offerings with **OM VAJRA PUSHPE PRATĪCCA SVĀHĀ** and so on:

the 16 wisdom consorts are [the four goddesses offering music] blue (Lute Goddess) Vajravīnā, yellow (Flute Goddess) Vajravamshā, red (Goddess of the Round Drum) Vajramurajā, and green (Clay Drum Goddess) Vajramrdamgā, who have one face and four arms with the principal two hands holding up their respective instrument and the two outside hands holding vajra and bell;

[the four goddesses offering song and dance] red (Smiling Goddess of Garlands) Vajramālyā, blue (Charming Goddess of Beauty) Vajralāsyā, yellow (Singing Goddess) Vajragītā, green (Dancing Goddess) Vajranirtyā, who also have one face and four hands; in their first two hands [the first two goddesses] hold vajra and bell in a laughing and proud manner, the third [goddess] strikes cymbals, and the fourth [goddess turns] the Pekor lotus mudra; in their lower right hands they are holding a skull cup and in the left a damaru drum; Prajñārakshita taught that the third [Vajragitā] has a staff with bells, and although in the *Khyepar Selche (Expert Clarification)* a rattle is mentioned, our own system of Lawapa asserts the cymbals;

[then the traditional offerings by] the white (Flower Goddess)
Vajrapushpā with a bowl of flowers, the smoke colored (Incense
Goddess) Vajradhupā with a censer of incense, the red (Goddess of
Lights) Vajralokā with an offering lamp, and the red (Goddess of Scents)
Vajraghandā with a conch shell of perfume; their right hands are holding
their respective implement and a damaru drum, and the two left hands
are holding a skull-cup and khatvānga;

[and finally the four sense offerings by] the white (Goddess of Forms) Vajradharshā with a mirror, the red (Goddess of Taste) Vajrarasyā with bowl of honey beer, the green (Goddess of Touch) Vajrasparshā with various cloth garments, and the white (Dharmadatu Goddess) Vajradharmā holding a (source of phenomena) Dharmodaya; their second right hand is holding a damaru drum, and the two left hands are holding a skull-cup and khatvānga – visualize all [of these goddesses] making offerings.

ત્રીન્યાર્કી જૂ. પ્રદાસ કિ. ફે. ફે. ત્યા કૃત્યા સ્ત્રે ત્યા સ્ત્રે સ્ત્રે ત્યા સ્ત્રે ત્

बेद्र-प्रते श्रुः स्वान्त्र न्त्र्या विद्र- श्रुः त्र व्यान्ते । स्वान्त्र स्वान्त्र

है। वट्यक्ट्रियानिहर्या क्ष्रियानिहर्या क्ष्रियान्य स्थाप्त है। वट्यक्ट्रियानिहर्या क्ष्रियान्य स्थाप्त क्ष्रिया क्ष्रियान्य स्थाप्त क्ष्रियान्य स्थापत क्ष्रियाच्या स्थापत क्ष्रियान्य स्थापत स्थापत क्ष्रियान्य स्थापत क्ष्रियान्य स्थापत स्यापत स्थापत स्

यक्त्रांत्राच्या व्यत्रे स्वर्थाक्ष्याच्या विद्याचे व्यक्त व्यव्याचित्राच्या विद्याच्या विद्याच्याच्याच्या विद्याच्या विद्याच्याच विद्याच्या विद्याच्याच विद्याच्याच विद्याच्याच विद्याच्याच विद्याच विद्या

The mantra is OM VARJA VĪNI HŪNG HŪNG PHAT "Lute Goddess," WAMSHE "Flute goddess," MRITANGE "goddess of the Round Drum," MURAÑJE "Clay Drum Goddess," HĀSYA "Laughing Goddess of Garlands," LĀSYA "Charming Goddess of Beauty," GĪTI " Singing Goddess," NIRTYE "Dancing Goddess," PUSHPE "Flower Goddess," DHŪPE "Incense Goddess," DHĪPE "Goddess of Lights," GHANDHE "Goddess of Scents," RŪPA VAJRI "Vajra Goddess of Forms," RASA VAJRI "Vajra Goddess of Touch," DHARMADHĀTU VAJRI "Vajra Dharmadhātu (source of phenomena) Goddess," adding the word VARJA to [the first twelve] of them.

Visualize the offering goddesses in forms beautiful to behold with sublime ornaments and garments making the offerings. And whenever there is an offering by 16 wisdom consorts [in the text] below it needs to be done [similarly].

Visualize that again from the HŪNG at the heart light radiates and becomes blue Dākinī, green Lāmā, red Khandarohā, and yellow Rūpinī, the four [dakinis] who hold up and offer skull-cups filled with the five meats and five nectars. The meaning of the mantra that is recited is: OM PAÑCA AMRĪTA "the five nectars," PŪJAMEGHA "offering cloud," SAMUDRĀ "ocean," SPHARANA "flourish," SAMAYA HŪNG "by your pledge, accept and consume." [Then] sprinkle drops of the inner offering.

The offering goddesses dissolve into the field of accumulation of the Bhagavan, and Heruka and consort enter into meditative union. Imagine that they are delighted by the offering of stainless bliss and emptiness.

The mantra means: OM SHRĪ MAHĀSUKHA "glorious great bliss," HE HE RU RU KAM ĀH HŪNG HŪNG PHAT "body, speech, and mind of the Blood Drinker are delighted."

Enter into the meditative equipoise of suchness which is their nature. In this way make the outer, inner, secret, and suchness offerings.

यर्चूर्र्न्यायः बुर्न्यते : कुर्यायः ग्रीयः त्यायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्व स्वायः स्वयः स्वायः स्वायः स्वयः स्

क्षेर्यक्षित्वात्त्र्यः वित्रम् वित्रम् वित्रम् क्षेत्रः वित्रम् वित्

युष्टे स्थान्य स्थान्य

Confess with the verses: "[All negative actions arising from] attachment, hatred...," rejoice with the verses "I rejoice in [the merit of] all the Tathagatas...," go for refuge with the four lines "[I go for refuge in the Buddhas of] the three times and all directions," give rise to aspirational bodhicitta with the four [lines] "[I will completely eliminate] all misdeeds...," give rise to applied bodhicitta with the four [lines] "[Difficult to attain even] by Brahma, Indra and so forth...," and offer the body with "[To liberate all beings from the] ocean of cyclic existence that is difficult to cross."

By reciting these words of the Indian scriptures three or more times gather the accumulations of merit. Then continue with the Four Immeasurables and gather and dissolve the fields of accumulation into you as taught by the venerable Ghantapa.

## 2.3.2.1.4.2. Accumulation of wisdom: bringing death onto the path of the Dharmakaya

Second the *accumulation of wisdom*: the recipients of the offerings to the field of accumulation, the ones who offer, and the offering substances have no self-nature but are mere dependent originations – from the state of thinking in this way, visualize a white HE syllable on the crown of your head, a red RU at the throat, and a deep-blue KA at the heart. HE means "absence of arising from self, other, [both,] or without cause." RU means "free from persisting and perishing." KA means "beyond the two extremes of existence or non-existence, persisting or perishing."

Investigate with the discriminating wisdom and insight of realizing each [of these] contemplations. Because beings do not realize that the nature of all phenomena is like this, they have been circling in the three worlds of samsara for a very long time. Thinking: "After rising as Heruka, I will realize the wisdom without the duality of subject and object of sentient beings," meditate on compassion observing phenomena.

Recite the **OM SVABHĀVA...** mantra, whose meaning is the same as before, and meditate on the nature of all three realms of existence as non-referential emptiness.

चन्नमा दे.इचा.जो इचा.जु.व्यू.चर.इमा क्रूं.लर.बचन्नाःशी येत्र.खेन्ना खेन्नम्मा हु.खेन्ना खेन्नम्मा हु.खेन्ना क्रुं.लर.बचन्नाःशी येत्र.खेन्ना खेन्नम्मा हु.खेन्ना हु.खेन्ना खेन्नम्मा हु.खेन्ना हु.खेना हु.खेन्ना हु.खेना हु.खेन्ना हु.खेना हु.खे

हे. तह या हे ये अया था सूर्या क्षेत्र भी क्षेत्र के प्राप्त के प्

केंद्र में न्यू अम्मे अम्स ने पार्हे न्यू अस्ति ।

यशिरश्रासः है।

षो भी अग्गी किंग्र ५ दें अर्थे।

₹<u>₹</u>5'यश

मैं.स्याय.कूट.य.कूर्य.वम्.यया

Visualize that through the power of past aspirations your own mind [appears] as the stacked three syllables: from the white OM emanate the hosts of deities of the chakra of body that turn all animals and beings below the ground into the deities of the body chakra; from the red  $\bar{A}H$  emanate the deities of the chakra of speech that turn all land animals and beings on top of the ground into the deities of the speech chakra; from the blue  $H\bar{U}NG$  emanate the deities of the chakra of mind that turn all beings of the heavenly realms and in the sky into the deities of the mind chakra.

Entering into meditative equipoise they all dissolve back into their respective syllable. And the three syllables also dissolve, the OM into the  $\bar{A}H$ ,  $\bar{A}H$  into  $H\bar{U}NG$ , and the  $H\bar{U}NG$  also dissolves: the U-vowel into the body of the syllable, the body into the head, that into the half-moon, into the drop, and the drop dissolves into the nada. Imagine that the nada also becomes extremely fine and non-observable.

Then recite **OM SHŪNYATĀ...**, the mantra means: **SHŪNYATĀ** "emptiness," **JÑĀNA VAJRA** "vajra-wisdom," **SVABHĀVA** "nature," **ATMAKOH** "I myself," **AHAM** "I am." To meditate for a long time on emptiness which is the cause of compassion focusing on benefitting sentient beings is the essential [union of] emptiness and compassion.

The Lord Jigten Gönpo said about the ultimate view which is uncontaminated by the labels of the great Madyamaka, Mahamudra and Dzogchen:

"The ultimate realization is untouched by the Three Great Ones." And:

"[This is] the actual accumulation of wisdom."

The root tantra says:

"[Accumulation is] preceded by cause and so forth and emptiness..."\*

\* This refers to: क्रांचर क्रेंच्यु व्या क्रेंच्यु र प्रेंच्यु र प

ब्रेशनार्थः द्वान्त्रम् । त्याद्वीरः न्याय्याय्याः व्रक्षः न्याय्याः व्रक्षः व्याप्तः व्याप्तः व्याप्तः व्याप्त य्याप्तः व्याप्तः व्यापतः व्य

श्व भी दिस्यानि त्याही स्मान्य प्रति स्मानि स्मानि

वेशःसदी

द्रम्भंति श्रुप्ता वर्ष्या स्त्राचित्र स्त्राच्या स्त्राच्या व्याप्त स्त्र स्

मृत्रेश्वात्तात्त्। वर्ष्यान्त्र्यात्रक्षेत्रात्त्र्यात्रक्षेत्रात्त्रः वर्ष्यात्रः प्रत्यात्रक्षेत्रः वर्ष्या

ने त्याय वृत्तः देशकी। देया तुः खुः खुदे : श्रुवा व्यवशाधीन विदेशे रातुन।

नःसरःग्रवश्रः स्ट्रेरःध्रेरःप्रा भ्रूगः सःभ्रुयः सः स्ट्रेरःध्रेरःप्रा रुरः केवः संध्ये स्टर्ग्ववस्य। Even though there are many different explanations in the explanatory tantras, the Samvarodaya says:

"Abide in the appearance of mind-only itself and meditate on the accumulations for enlightenment."

In terms of the three [occurrences] to bring onto the path [of the kayas], this means to bring death onto the path of Dharmakaya.

### 2.3.2.2. The main practice session

The contents of the main practice of the session are summarized as:

"Raise the nada and generate the ground with the supported [deities], and meditate on the Four Yogas in order."

# 2.3.2.2.1. The wind-mind arising as the nada: bringing [the bardo] onto the path of the Sambhogakaya

First, again visualize your mind abiding as the form of a very fine nada with a reddish-white tinge which is raised up in the sky. It is extremely fine, an empty form of mere mind-wind free of any obscurations of karma and afflictions. From the pure Dharmakaya it arises as the illusory display of Sambhogakaya, which is bringing the bardo onto the path of the Sambhogakaya, and it is the very seed of the generation of the support and the supported.

### 2.3.2.2.2. Generating the supporting base

The second part is the generation of the of the stacked elements with Mount Meru, and the multi-colored lotus with the crossed vajra.

#### 2.3.2.2.1. Generating the layered stack of elements

Ghantapa's *Sadhana of the Wishfullfilling Jewel of the Five Deities* says about the sequence of elements:

"The (1) 'abode of cow and oxen,' and (2) 'floating above,' (3) 'dry residue,' and (4) 'channels,' from those take the nature of (5) 'long trumpet'!"

लेगमाहे। द्राकेदार्विमाना नदेन्तकेदार्विमाना स्थाना स्थाना स्थाना स्थाना स्थाना स्थाना स्थाना स्थाना स्थाना स् चित्रामा स्थाना स्थान स्थाना स्थाना स्थाना स्थाना स्थाना स्थाना स्थाना स्थाना स्थाना

सम्प्रम् त्राची द्वा के द्वा की स्वास्त्र की स्वास्त्र की स्वी स्वास्त्र की स्वास्

सुर-देवे-श्रेर-तु-दे-त्यश्यक्ते-त्यीवावित्। विदेवा-त्यन-त्यी प्रदीवश्यश्या सक्तिः साम्रोतिका-त्या-त्या-त्यक्ता-त्यक्ति-त्यक्त

मेदे स्ट्रेट र्'ने यम कुदे द्यीय विदेश र्मा र्मार में द्यी नियम ह्या सक्त सा स्ट्रिस स्ट्रिस

नेते क्षेट र्राया यक्षा व्याप्त क्षेत्र विश्व क्षेत्र क्षेत्र

चक्चिर्या प्रचिर्यं स्थान्त्राची स्थान्य स्थान्त्र स्था

Regarding the meaning of this: even though all Indian and Tibetan scriptures teach to [build up the] meditation from the wind mandala, in our system it is best to meditate from the state of emptiness: from an E syllable arises a Dharmodaya tetrahedron (source of phenomena) which has a thin root pointing downwards [i.e. the tip points down] and the larger flat side faces upwards, symbolizing the great bliss of space-like nature.

Since it is also correct to translate (5) "long trumpet" as great bliss, and (1) "abode of cow and oxen..." is taught to be related to "going upwards," the meaning of "abode of cow and oxen" is explained as being the base, (2) "floating above" as being water, (3) "dry residue" as fire, and (4) "channels" as air. And I think that "long trumpet" is very much related to "sky."

At the center [inside the tetrahedron] from blue **YAM** arises a blue wind mandala shaped like a bow. Each of the two tips of the bow is marked with a banner with three points streaming down.

Above the wind, from RAM [arises] a fire mandala with a red color and triangular shape. Its character is signified by an intensely blazing fire.

Above this, from **BAM** [arises] a water mandala with a white color and circular shape. Its character is signified by a vase [in the center].

On top of this from LAM [arises] an earth
mandala with a yellow color and square shape
which has three-pronged vajra symbols [in the four corners]. Imagine
that the mandalas are blessed by reciting these seed syllables.

At the center of the earth mandala, from SUM [arises] four-sided [pyramid shaped] Mount Meru, made from four different precious gems and ornamented with eight pinnacles. It is made from white crystal in the east, blue lapis lazuli in the south, red Lotus ruby in the west and yellow gold in the north. In the cardinal and inter-cardinal directions are high mountain peaks which make the eight pinnacles. [These are] the layered elements with Mount Meru.

LAM OF BAM BAM BAM

ये क्षेर्या अर्दे द्रायमे व्याप्ता क्षेत्रा क्षा व्याप्त क्षेत्र व्याप्त व्याप्त व्याप्त व्याप्त व्याप्त व्यापत व

मिश्रमा श्रें स्वान्त्रमा हैं स्वेन हैं न्या निवान हैं न्या निवान हैं निवान निवान हैं स्वान निवान निव

त्त्रभः स्वे [नुदे नुशे न्या श्रेन श्री न्यु भान्य दे स्व त्य श्रे श्री स्व त्य श्रि भाषा न्यु भाषा न्यु

पश्चिम्पः मुक्षा विष्णा विष्ण

This is presented as explained in the *Abhidhana* commentary and others, [however] there are also descriptions which are widely different.

### 2.3.2.2.2. Generating the multicolored lotus and crossed vajra

Second the *multicolored lotus and crossed vajr*a: on top of Mount Meru through the complete transformation of a yellow **PAM** syllable [arises] a multicolored lotus with 64 or 32 petals in the sequence of white, yellow, red, green, and blue color starting from the north-east. The extension of the petals is half as wide as the arm-span of the main [deity] or half the width of the palace door [i.e. ½ door-size] (*see illustration of mandala dimensions: 1*). The diameter of the flower bed is [one length of] the chalk line [which is used to create the lines of the mandala]. [When using] a short chalk line, the length is 16 door-sizes, however everybody prefers the long chalk line which is 20 door-sizes (2).

The flower bed is green and at its center, from a blue HŪNG [arises] a crossed vajra whose eastern prong is white, northern prong green, western prong red and southern prong yellow. Its blue navel is square and twelve door-sizes from outer edge to outer edge (3).

The height of the top of the crossed vajra is five door-sizes (4) [above the flower bed] when [using] the twenty [door-size long chalk line], and if [using] the 16 [door-size chalk line] it is explained as one door-size high.

If one [uses] the short chalk line, the central prong's extension [i.e. how far it sticks out of the navel] is two door-sizes, but nowadays using the longer chalk line it is four door-sizes (5). The thickness of the central prong at the root is three small units (6) [1 door-size = 4 small units], and at the tip of the [four] door-size extension it is two small units (7).

[At the navel] eight small units to the right and left of the each of the central prong's "Brahma" center axis (8) is an inside line of the side prongs (9) and ten small units from each is the outside line (10). The thickness of the side prongs is two small units at the root (11), within the bulge of the vajra three small units (12), and at the tip one small unit (13). The [tips of the side prongs] are bent into the central prong not quite two small units from its tip (14). This is what is stated as "the side prong [meets the central prong] at the tip of the portal ornament in the sun disk (15)..."

यास्त्रे स्वर् द्वात् क्ष्यं क्ष्यं

न् दस्य अर्थे वा राष्ट्र वा स्वाप्त । स्वाप्त

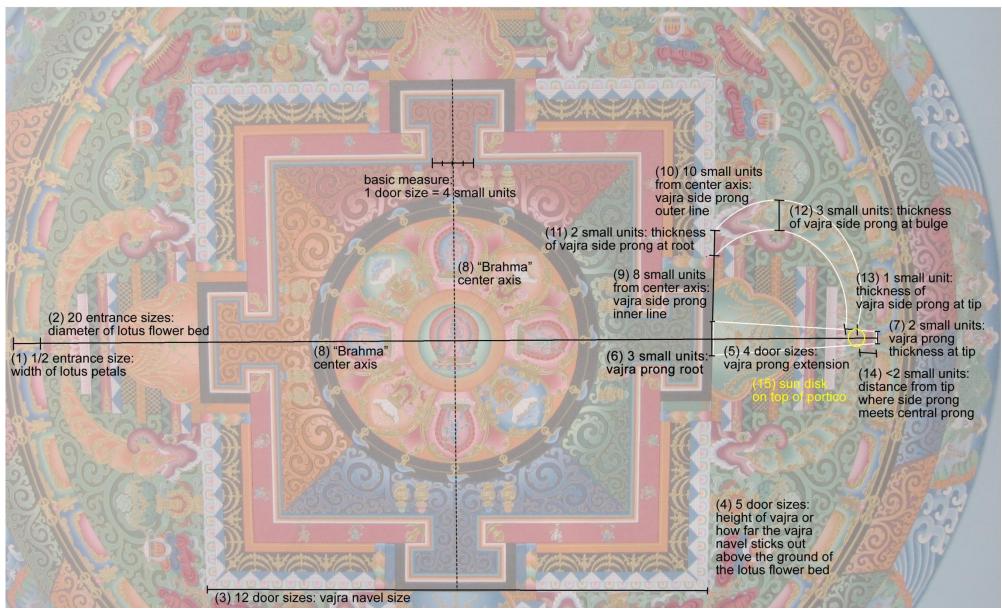
नेति हो नर्स (नै) हूर गु त्या हो नर्दर नित्र होता हो न्यर हित्र के न्यर हो ने स्थर हो हो न्यर हो ने स्थर हो हो न्यर हो ने स्थर हो हो हो हो हो है से स्थर हो स्थर हो हो हो है से स्थर हो हो है से स्थर हो हो है से स्थर हो है से स्थर हो हो है से स्थर है से स्थर हो है से स्थर है से स्थर हो है से स्थर है से

[With] the other [chalk line] the inside line of the prong is six small units [from the center line]. But even though it is stated that it emerges outside from eight small units away, there would be a problem since it would not be visible.

Meditate that the prongs have the colors of the cardinal direction as explained before.

At the navel [of the crossed vajra], from a green PAM (or BAM) [arises] a multicolored lotus with eight petals. Visualize that they are red in the cardinal directions and yellow in the north-west and south-east, green in the center and south-west, black in the north-east and the corolla is yellow.





(illustration of mandala dimentions)

### गशुस्राम इत्यादर्वे सामने निक्षा स्वाप्य दिनमें इत्याद्वे सामाना प्याप्य

देवे क्षेट र हे हे साया गायी से स्वा नाये वा नाये वा

### 2.3.2.2.3. The way of meditating on the Four Yogas

Third, to meditate on the Four Yogas, first [comes] the yoga of meditation.

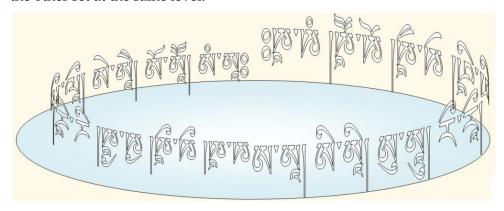
### 2.3.2.2.3.1. The yoga of meditation

Corresponding to the white and red elements of the parents: in one system two sets of [only] the vowels are arranged in two circles, an outer one and an inner one, on a white moon with a reddish hue. In the second system the moon is generated from the vowels and the sun from the consonants. This sadhana is composed using the latter which is the system of Lawapa.

Here, at the center of a small multicolored lotus on a moon disk one set of white vowels is turning clockwise and another set counter-clockwise in one layer. They are the essence of the thirty-two major marks of a Buddha, the mirror-like primordial wisdom.

Above this on a sun disk are two sets of the 34 consonants in red color with **Da Dha Da Dha Ya La** added, arranged in one layer turning clockwise and counter-clockwise. They are the essence of the eighty minor marks of a Buddha, the primordial wisdom of equality.

Although there are a few different systems of arrangements for this, [here] the white vowels are facing inwards and [starting from the front] one set of 16 is going clockwise on the right side [looking from its center] half way around to the far side of the moon disk. From there a [second] set of [vowels] in the reverse order AH ANG OH O EH E and so on are arranged on the left side turning counter-clockwise up to the front facing the other set at the same level.



स्थि। इस्यायन्त्रात्यम् स्थान्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्

न्यस्य ने न्या विकास के स्वास्त्र के स्वास्

याद्याः क्र्राचित्रः व्यव्याय्यः व्याय्यः व्यायः व्याय्यः व्यायः व्याय्यः व्याय्यः व्याय्यः व्याय्यः व्याय्यः व्याय्यः व्यायः व्याय्यः व्यायः व्यः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः

This is in accord with the *Samvarodaya* which says: "Bodhicitta gradually descends in the left and right channels of the body."

The forty consonants are also arranged in this way and it is taught that we need to visualize [them] arising like a reflection on the moon and sun [disk].

In other systems of arrangement of how the vowels are placed on the moon [disk], both sets of vowels are set up turning counter-clockwise. Also the consonants on the sun [disk] are set up in both successive and reverse order and the 40 consonants appear only turning clockwise. [But] in my understanding they [should be] arranged exactly as described earlier. The *Abhidhana* says:

"The vowels and consonants are arranged in duplicate [sets] with progressive and reverse order,"

so the vowels and consonants each are in duplicate [sets,] as the *Drubtab Tsugnor* (*Crown Jewel Sadhana*)<sup>37</sup> of Luhipa also explains, and the way of adding on the six extra consonants is also done as explained in the *Crown Jewel Sadhana*.

# 2.3.2.2.3.2. The subsequent yoga: bringing [birth] onto the path of the Nirmanakaya

Second is the subsequent yoga: The nada of your own mind enters



nada string tigle drop crescent moon head line

Ha body

Ah lengthener

U vowel

between the sun and moon [disks]. From the expanding nada a Tigle drop, then a crescent moon, and the head-line [form], and from that the body of the letter **HA** and then the **U** vowel are established. The **HŪNG** syllable is the nature and origin of Vajrasattva and shines in five-colored light, which is the primordial wisdom of individually discriminating awareness.

याञ्चयात्रायक्ष्यः विवायः हो। न्याय्यायक्ष्यः विवायः होन्यक्ष्यः विवायः विवाय

मी ना में त्रात्में त्रात

त्तर्भा वं.ट.जश्राचीय.स.पट्टी वीडीवीश.चीय.सष्टु.वोषशःश्लेयश्चट्टाःश्लेटाःशेलेटा

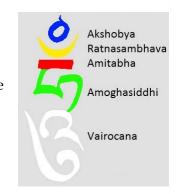
It radiates multi-colored light, collecting the blessings of all Buddhas and Bodhisattvas, which melt into itself. [The HŪNG then transforms into] a five pointed blue vajra marked by a HŪNG at its navel. Deities emanate from it which purify the obscurations of beings, turning them [also] into deities. The heroes and so forth of the ten directions are invited. Through the power of their union of method and wisdom they melt and dissolve into the HŪNG's nada which is the primordial wisdom of accomplishing activities.

This is similar to the bardo consciousness entering in the center [between] the white element of the father and the red element of the mother. Your mind itself which is in the form of the nada enters into the center [between] the white moon with the 32 vowels and the red sun with the 80 consonants which are the objects of attainment: the major and minor marks of a Buddha.

The vajra together with the HŪNG syllable from which the complete body of the deity is established signify the means of purifying the temporary ground of birth, which is bringing [birth] onto the path of the Nirmanakaya. Among the Four Yogas this is the subsequent yoga.

In the Chakrasamvara root and explanatory tantras and its commentaries and so forth, during the generation of the five aspects of true enlightenment a singular **HŪNG** is established from the nada. This is explained as being connected with the time during which forms are established. The *Samvarodaya* says:

"Akshobya is the 'soupy' form [which is the first stage of the embryo],
Ratnasambhava is the 'oval lump'
[second stage of the embryo],
the Boundless Protector [Amitabha] is the 'lump of flesh' [third embryo stage],
Amoghasiddhi is the 'round'
[fourth embryo stage],
Vairochana is the 'hardened'
[last embryo stage],
these are the five stages that are taught."



त्र वियाशस्त्र । अः व्याप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त । क्षुं त्ये वा त्य का हें हे हे खे सा व्याप्त स्वाप्त स्व विवाय स्वाप्त अस्त्र । अः व्याप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप

ने वश्या विवाद क्ष्या ने वे प्रत्या विवाद क्ष्या हे व प्रत्य के विवाद क्ष्या ने क्ष्य क्ष्य के विवाद क्ष्या क्ष्या के विवाद क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्षय क्ष्या क्ष्या क्षय क्षय क्ष्या के विवाद क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्षय क्ष्या

प्राचित्रभा विश्वान्त्रभा क्षेत्रप्ति क्ष

য়ुःश्वे अर्च्य स्वयाः अर्ध्य प्रत्य प्रत्य स्वयाः स्वयः स्व

Also in Abhayakara's *Menngak Nyema* (*Ear of Grain Instructions*)<sup>38</sup> one meditates by generating a five-pointed vajra from the **HŪNG** syllable and also the enlightened ones explained that the [vajra] hand implement is generated here.

### 2.3.2.2.3.3. The perfect yoga

The third [yoga] is the perfect yoga with [the sections of] the *manner of completing the support and supported*, the *manner of detailed visualization* and its subsections of *purity, putting on the armor, entry into the wisdom deities, bestowing the empowerment*, and *offering and praise*.

2.3.2.2.3.3.1. The manner of completing the support and the supported The first section is the instantaneous generation [which occurs with] the recitation of the three mantras. First recite OM AH HŪNG three times, and the moon, sun, and seed syllable together with the [vajra] hand implement completely transform. Recite the second mantra OM SARVA VĪRA YOGINĪ KĀYA VĀK CITTA VAJRA SVABHĀVA ATMAKOH – HANG, which means "I myself am of the vajra-nature of the body, speech and mind of all the heroes and yoginis, and the three mysteries [body, speech, and mind] of all the heroes and yoginis of the ten directions are the nature of great bliss." Thus establish the pride of the Rupakaya Form Body. The third mantra is OM VAJRA SHUDDHAH SARVA DHARMAH VAJRA SHUDDHOH – HANG and it means "All phenomena are pure like a vajra, I am vajra purity."

Establish the pride of the Dharmakaya which is the vajra-like purity of non-dual wisdom in which the form body and bliss-emptiness are not separate.

Meditate that from the complete transformation of the moon, sun, and seed syllable together with the [vajra] hand implement, the perfected mandala of Heruka with the support [of the palace] and the supported [deities] instantly manifests. This is the wisdom of the Dharmadhatu expanse of phenomena. At this time it is explained like this in accordance with the assertions of Lord Dharmakirti, who put together some earlier and later [parts of the text].

माहिसामा दे क्रिसामर मास्यायदे नसा ख्यादी स्र स्त्री स्त्र स्त्री स्त्र स्त्री स्त्र स्त

 $\frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{2} - \frac{$ 

सर्देव नहें दायश

द्धुं दे 'न्ग्नर'र्से 'स्या चुर 'नदे ||
दे 'क्षेर 'दिर्से र 'से 'नव्या प्रमान न्या |
स्राप्त के याया क्षे 'प्रदे 'प्रमान क्ष्या |
स्राप्त के याया क्षे 'प्रदे 'प्रमान क्ष्या |
स्राप्त के प्रमान के याया क्षे 'प्रदे 'प्रमान क्ष्या |
स्राप्त के प्रमान के याया क्षे 'प्रदे 'प्रमान क्ष्या |
स्राप्त के प्रमान के

क्ट्र-ट्रे-ब्रियाश्चित्रः स्था विश्वा विश्व

ने प्यम् बन्दाने हिना क्षेत्र वश्व के वा के वा ही मार्थे म

#### 2.3.2.2.3.3.2. The manner of detailed visualization

Second, for the *detailed visualization* [you visualize] in the same manner as the earlier meditation on the protection cycle. In order to purify fixation on conceptual attributes, purify [conceptual fixation] into emptiness with the **OM SVABHĀVA** mantra.

At this time the support along with vajra fence, tent, and fire wall instantly appears as before, in its center are the stacked elements with Mount Meru on top of which is a multicolored lotus. In its center is a crossed vajra, and as explained before, its navel is square and twelve large units [= door-sizes] wide. In its center one needs to visualize a celestial palace.

#### 2.3.2.2.3.3.2.1. Generating the support of the celestial palace

The Abhidhana teaches:

"Above the elements, circle, and so forth from a white **BHRUM** visualize the distinct form of the layered palace with four doors on four sides perfectly ornamented by four portals." and so forth.

[Arising] from **BHRUM** a celestial palace with all the characteristics perfectly complete is described. In the twelve door-size wide navel of the crossed vajra (*see illustration of palace dimensions: 1*) four door-sizes from where the "Brahma" center lines meet (2) are five wall layers of black, green, red, yellow and white [color].

The thickness of each layer is  $1/20^{th}$  of a door[-size], so the thickness of the five layers [together] is a small unit (3) or  $\frac{1}{4}$  [door-size].

[The walls] are thirteen small units high (*see illustration of 3-dimensional palace: A1*), and apart from the [door openings which are] two small units on either side of the "Brahma" center lines they [enclose] the four sides. The four entrances to the four directions are each two small units left and right of the center (*4*) which makes four small units in total, so one door-size.

Also one large unit [or one door-size] from the inside corners of the walls, are vestibules going outside (5, see entrance dimensions: E1) [with a door at the far end].

देवस्यापस्याप्यस्य दिन्द्वस्य पिष्ठस्य स्याप्ते स्थान्य स्थित्वस्य दिन्द्वस्य स्थान्य स्थान्य

स्तर्भाकःश्चर् निविद्याः स्त्राच्याः स्त्राचः स्त्राच्याः स्त्राच्याः स्त्राच्याः स्त्राचः स्त

यास्त्रमास्त्रन्त्रार्थे स्थान्यम् वित्राच्यात्र स्थान्य स्था

नेति श्रेट पुः सेत सॅ केते स्य गुः माश्रे र ग्री स्ट स्वत् स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्व स्वेट माहेश प्यादेश कः स्वतः स्वेट स्वापाया स्वयः स्वेट स्वयः स्वयः स्वयः स्वरः स्वयः स् Then reaching two small units on either side of the [door openings forming an entrance way (*E*2)] are the entrance way back walls (*6*, *E*3), and from there reaching two small units towards the outside are the entrance way side walls (*E*4) [with posts and a portal in front\* (*E*5). While the wall inside measures two small units, counting the thickness of the back walls and posts in front it becomes four small units on the outside (7)]. From the [outer] edge of the entrance way side walls to the edge of the navel of the crossed vajra it is one small unit (*8*), and even though at their corner diagonals the insides of the vestibule side walls are described as longer and their outside shorter, this is not asserted in our system here.

Inside the entrance way side walls, flush with the [outer end of the] wall and of the same thickness are two posts (E6) [one on each side of the entrance way] which are eleven small units high (A2). On top of them is a ceiling support beam (E7) which is one small unit high and thick, and eight small units long (9) [inside across the entrance way]. Above the beam a wall which is a continuation of the [5-layered] side walls goes up four small units [posts 11 + beam 1 + wall 4 = 16 small units], so it is three small units higher than the other palace walls. In the ceiling space in front of it are nets and loops of pendants (A3).

From the bottom of the previously mentioned ceiling support posts up to the top of the wall it is 16 small units (*A*4), and each of the other [side walls, i.e. the vestibule side walls (*E*8) as well as the other palace side] walls which reach up to the entrance ways are 13 small units [high] (*A*1).

Above the side walls is a molding band of yellow frieze [made] of gold and jewels which is one small unit high and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  small units wide [forming a slight overhang] (10, A5), and from a half small unit high wall, rafters ends stick out (E11, A6), attached with the most beautiful fine jewels of various shapes and colors.

<sup>\*</sup> Note the difference between the traditions of the flat 2-dimensional mandala drawings and the 3-dimensional mandala representations. In the flat drawings the portals are not drawn looking from the top, but lying flat on the ground, while in the 3-dimensional mandalas there is a portal in front and a gap between the portal and the entrance way side walls.

देव केट र प्रकाशक माने माने स्वर्ध में श्रुपार्थ केट में देव केट र में

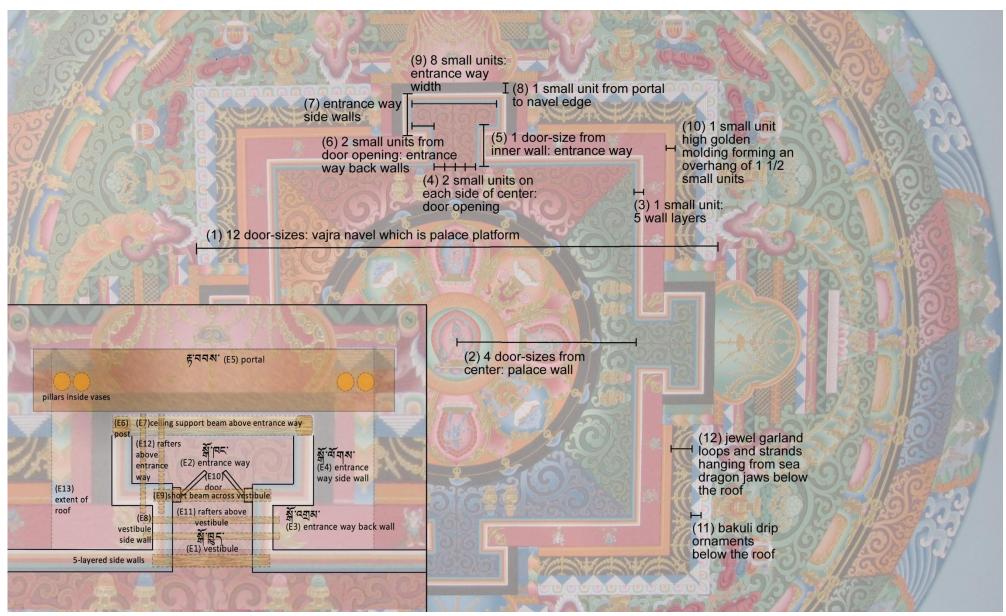
यन् प्यत्रम् न्यान्य स्त्रम् [भ्रा] स्वाया स्त्रम् । त्रि वि । त्

स्तःक्ष्यःस्। ग्रावित्यःलभः।यटःग्रीःक्षःम्रीःम्। स्वाद्यःकःस्वतः नद्यः न्याःस्यः स्वाद्यः स्वाद्यः स्वाद्यः स्व Above the [golden molding is a stacked entablature with] one small unit high columns (*see inset of bracket entablature*: *B1*) of dark maroon stone with capitals of red pearl and [short] bow-shaped brackets (*B2*) of gems on top. On both their ends are small crystal columns (*B3*) with capitals of blue lapis lazuli and [long] bow-shaped brackets (*B4*) of silver on top.

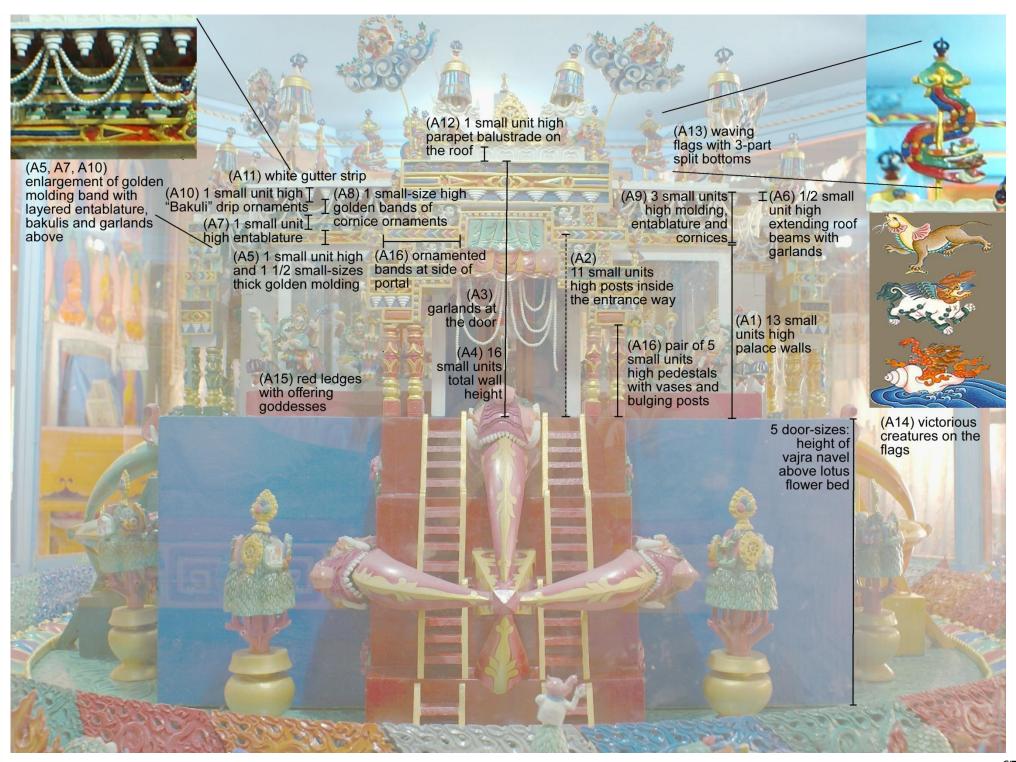
On the side walls [of the palace is an entablature] with similar columns and capitals (*A*7), and on top of the four ends of [short] crossed bowshaped brackets (*B*2) of gems are four crystal columns with lapis lazuli capitals (*B*3), [holding up long] crossed bow-shaped silver brackets (*B*4).

On top of those is a flat band of golden [cornice ornaments] (A8) which is one small unit high. Even though one system asserts [an entablature with] four stacked layers of columns [and brackets] up to the cornice band, two [layers] are also accepted, or the walls in each of the four directions have four golden cornice bands. The columns together with the top brackets are one small unit, the cornice band is one small unit, and the molding is one small unit [high] (A9). So together with the walls which are 13 small units (A1), that makes 16 (A4).

Since half of the inside width of the celestial palace is 16 small units, this is the same as the wall height. This is how the palace is raised.



(illustration of palace dimensions and 3-dimensional entrance way)



दी.लट.स.ची.ट्ट.चै.च.<del>चीव</del>ु.[बीखे.]श्रूबोश.श्रू.जूबोश.चर.ची.चेथेट.च.च.चेथेट.क्चैट.टू.हु.हु.झुट.चछु.

अन्यः धनः इस्र शः वे ः वे वाशः उवः न्रः॥

$$\begin{split} & = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{$$

यो न्यर कः कुष् सुरे सु । त्री का क्ष्र में कु । विस्था सु । विस्

And the moldings, nets of garlands, bracket entablature and so forth extend [all the way around the palace] up to the entrance ways. [Also, as] the transmission of the explanatory tantra of the *Kyilchog Dorje Trengwa (Vajra Garland Mandala Ritual)* says:

"The entrance way side walls have a parapet [roof balustrade]," and [it] extends above the top of the portals as it is also explained in the *Vajra Garland Mandala Ritual*.

At the outer and inner ends of the vestibule side walls two short beams (*E9*) which are connected with the moldings and golden cornice bands extend across [the vestibule]. Nets of garlands and pendants also need to be visible above those.

Above the door lintel underneath the outside of the short beams are white wheels, yellow jewels, red lotuses, and blue crossed vajras, each of them one small unit wide and high, stacked upon one another. The door jambs, lintel, and sill are each half a small unit wide, and the door panels (E10) are each 1 ½ small units wide and ten small units high. There are two panels which are opened and closed from the inside and open towards the outside.

In the center of the celestial palace which looks like that, is a multicolored lotus with a green [flower bed] navel with a radius of one large unit around the "Brahma" center point and a yellow corolla which is one small unit wide [around that]. There are eight lotus petals, red in the four directions, yellow in the north-west and south-east, green in the south-west, and blue in the north-east. They are two large units wide and are surrounded by a one small unit wide blue rim with a garland of cleaver knives.

Outside of that up to the main marking line [of the 5-layered wall] which is half a large unit away, the mandala ground is blue in the east, green in the north, red in the west and yellow in the south according to the colors of the cardinal directions.

स्रुद्रास्त्रितः सम्बद्धाः सम्बद्धाः स्रुद्धाः स्रुद्धाः स्रुद्धाः स्रुद्धाः स्रुद्धाः स्रुद्धाः स्रुद्धाः स्रु स्रुद्धाः स्रुद्धाः सम्बद्धाः स्रुद्धाः स्

ने भू नुते भू मन् निर्मे के वे न्याया अन्मा ने दार्थे के वे प्यहे अप में मूर्ये के वे प्यहे वा मिन् भू विकास मुन्

देवे अवत खुआ ब्रेवे ब्रेट पुन गु त्वेद अवत प्राप्त के विश्व के प्राप्त के प्राप

In between the petals at the edge of the central lotus in the cardinal and inter-cardinal directions eight pillars which are one small unit [thick] and 13 small units high are set on top of the encircling rim. On top [of the pillars] are capitals and bow-shaped short and long brackets together with beams going around, all together three small units high, which makes a total height of 16 small units. The beams also form a circle like the lotus rim, and at their joins they are supported by the pillars and marked by cleaver knives.

Above, in each cardinal direction are 22 rafters, which are colored [according to] the four directions. Their outside ends sit on the golden cornice bands and have Makara sea dragon jaws at their tips which form an outside overhang of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  small units wide. Their inside ends are overhanging the load bearing circle of beams by one small unit, and their face is covered with precious jewels splendid in their radiance.

Extending across above the vestibule are two rafters (*E11*) which have sea dragon jaws on both ends. The rafters above the entrance way (*E12*) extend [from the inner to the outer end] with their inner ends on the outer vestibule beam [and entrance way back walls] and the outer ends above the entrance way ceiling [support beam. At their outer end which is hidden behind the portal] it is not necessary to have sea dragon jaws, however there should be sea dragon jaws at the inner ends of the rafters that go above the left and right entrance way back walls [sticking out behind it]. Above the left and right entrance way side walls, short rafter ends which also have sea dragon jaws are stuck deeply [into the wall] like daggers.

Above this kind [of rafters is a layer of] jewel branches\* [supporting] an even flat roof (*E13*) which is made from jewel dust plaster and one small unit high.

On the rafter ends at the roof edge are blue "Bakuli" or "Sharbu" downward pointing spout drip ornaments (11) with a white protruding jewel relief like upside down anointing vases without a spout. They have the same height as the plastered [roof] of one small unit (A10).

<sup>\*</sup> Note that the whole structure is not substantial, made from solid wood, but appears insubstantial, radiant and transparent, made of multi-colored jewels.

त्यामियाश्वास्त्र मूं श्राम्ट्र्या श्री क्ष्यां श्री म्ह्र्या श्री क्ष्या श्री म्ह्र्या श्री स्वाप्त स्वापत स्वाप्त स्वापत स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्

सिन्द्रा नुत्रम्य स्वित्रम्य [न्द्र्यः स्वेत्रम्यः [न्द्र्यः स्वेत्रम्यः स्वित्रम्यः स्वतः स्वत्रम्यः स्वतः स्वतः

देवे : ख्रीं प्राया विकास के स्वास्त के स्वास क

On the roof above [along] the eaves are golden gutter-like roof overhangs (*A11*) which are two small units wide and slanting downwards [like half of a gutter forming a decoratively curved lip around the roof which channels any rain water outwards] and covers the ledge for offering objects below. The vestibules, entrance ways, and gutter-strips all connected together should be visualized as being very beautiful.

Two loops of jewel garlands are hanging down in parallel rows from one jaw to the next of the sea dragons at the rafter ends (12, A6). From the middle of the [sea dragon] jaws [between the loops hang] three parallel [vertical] strands fringed with thick jewels. Hanging down from their tips reaching in between the Bakuli ornaments are Chamara yak tail whisks with jewel handles alternating with small bells. In the middle of the loops where they are hanging down are bigger jewels, to the right and left [of the middle] they are smaller, and the empty areas inside of the hanging loops are marked with crescent moons, vajras, and great jewels. Underneath the eaves attached to golden mirrors are multicolored cloth banners formed into bird beaks [i.e. downward pointing triangles].

On the roof above the eaves are white parapet [roof ornaments] whose height at the center and width are both one small unit each, being slightly lower at their flanks, and which are arranged standing up as balustrades (*A12*). In the four directions are golden vases each half a small unit [high] with jeweled poles coming out of them which have white half moons, yellow jewels and blue five-pointed vajras at their tips.

In between these three top-ornaments and the poles are "celestial scarf" [banners] whose upper part is one piece of cloth and lower part is cut into three fringes (*A13*). These banners are not victory banners, [but] as explained in the *Vajra Garland Mandala Ritual*, on the banners are images of [the three victorious] creatures: lions with eight legs, fish with hair, and conch shell bodies with sea dragon heads (*A14*). Placed [on the roof] alternating with eight victory banners, in each of the cardinal directions is a pair of [these banners, altogether] eight, which wave gracefully in the wind, their [three fringes] fluttering into three directions.

ब्रेन्न्त्विन्स्यन्तः व्यव्यान्यां वित्यान्यां वित्यान्याः वित्यान्यः वित्यान्याः वित्यान्यः वित्यान्

क्रियायदे स्थानम् क्षे हिन्द्री स्थित् स्था स्थान स्यान स्थान स्य

कुलानर में में के सुर मुर मानर वन अप दरा।

युर्ग र्ह्यायशक्तर्त्यायाययायरायायहित्ययार्वे त्र्यायाययायरायायहित्यः युर्ग र्ह्याययार्व्याययायाययायरायायहित्ययार्वे त्र्यायाययायरायाय्याय

ण्टा श्रूर् प्रेंत्र भूभायर् प्रमान्य विष्य प्रमानि श्रास्त्र प्रमानि स्रमानि श्रास्त्र प्रमानि स्रमानि स्रमानि

वेसःभूभःनवे धिःबेदःनशःनक्तुव॥

In the four corners above the parapet are monkeys who face inwards and whose tails hang outwards. They hold parasols which have a height of three small units up to their tips. The parasol covers are  $1\frac{1}{2}$  small units [wide] and fringed with a net of garland loops, strands, and tassels hanging down.

At the foot of the walls fitting right up to the corners of the vestibules are red [ledges for offering] desirable objects which are two small units high and wide (A15). Sixteen goddesses are holding up offering substances and making offerings facing inwards towards the mandala. The outside corners and inside corners [of the ledges next to the vestibules] are adorned with jewels and vajras on crescent moons.

Inside, set up on top of the eight pillars [around the central lotus] are eight short pillars [forming the capital], each half a large unit [high, or 2 small units], and on their tops are eight curved beams and four crossbeams [two going north to south and two going east to west, forming an open square in their center with the pillars at the cross sections of the circle]. And with similar elegance in the center up to the top [rises] a roof like a Chinese pagoda with a precious jewel vajra on top. Buddhaguhya says about this:

"The general shape is asserted as a stupa, a castle with a tower, a vajra dome on a mountain."

Since only this is what was taught [in the Indian systems] and the Tibetans who were not clear about the dimensions taught various different ways, one can just [use] whichever [dimensions] appear most beautiful.

Then [leading up to] the four doors with the four portals, there are jeweled staircases coming from the foundation below with the fence of crossed vajras. Some systems, such as this, assert a staircase and others don't, however the *Chögyü Performance Caryatantra* (or *Chonggyü Purification Tantra*) says:

"[It is] ornamented by a series of four stair cases."

इति स्ट्रे नित्र नित्र स्ट्रिस अप्तर्म नित्र क्षेत्र नित्र स्ट्रिस स्

द्वासारेरामिश्रामी सेरान् निम्मान्या विद्यामान्या विद्यामान्या विद्यासारे स्वास्त्र स

ट्यांस्। योषुःर्श्वेदःर्शःल। देलःयदः क्ष्मःसःदग्यःर्श्वेषःस्। द्वेःस्वदःव्यःद्वेःसवदःकःद्वदःयदः देवःश्वेदःर्शःल। देलःयदः क्ष्मःसःदग्यःर्श्वेषःश्वेषःस। द्वेःसवदःव्यःद्वेःसवदःत्वःद्वः

न्ते केट.री क्टमान मान्त्र मान्ति का किट हैं मान का किट मान किट मान का किट मान किट मान का किट मान का किट मान किट म

सवतः व्यक्तः हुं (सवत) कः क्ष्टः चक्र्. चक्किंटः च। कः क्ष्टः चल्ले देः स्वरः क्षेत्रः स्वरः च। चास्रेत्रः स्वरः च। स्वरः च। स्वरः च। स्वरः च। स्वरः च। स्वरः च। देवे : स्वेटः (५)। चास्रेत्रः स्वरः हुं : सवतः ने : द्रान्यः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः च।

क् श्रेव भी पिवयान् वीयाया वीया क क्र भी क क्र में ने प्राप्त क क्र में ने क्र में ने प्राप्त क क्र में ने क्

Thus it appears in the source [text], but if one does not accept this, [also leading up to] the navel at the roots of the crossed vajra prongs are landing platforms which are 16 small units wide, three small units deep, and whose height [all together] is the same as the height of the navel of the crossed vajra [i.e. the last landing is level with the navel platform and serves as a terrace in front of each portal].

On the two ends [of the uppermost landing] are two square [plinth pedestals] which are two small units high and [together] three small units wide. On top of those are golden vases each half a small unit high and wide, from which emerge pillars which bulge in the middle and have thinner upper and lower parts like the handles of a large drum. The vase and pillars are together five small units high (A16) and there are two pairs [one on each side of the portal] in each cardinal direction, making four, so all together there are 16.

Above the pillars [on the portal sides] are blue "Sharbu" bands adorned by white small [drip ornament] vases, [beginning] from 5 ½ small units on each [side] from the "Brahma" center lines and on each [side] 2 ½ small units wide, so 16 small units wide from outside edge to outside edge [including the portal opening] (see illustration of portal, left side: 1).

Above on both sides with an opening left and right six small units from the "Brahma" center line are two shelf bands which are three small units wide: a red ground of great gems "Rinchen" (2) encrusted with a variety of precious jewels, and a green horse-hoof "Tamik" [band] (3) with shapes of horses' hoofs.

Above that is a golden shelf "Sernam" (4) which is flush with the outside edge [of the previous bands] and whose inside edge reaches four small units on both sides of the "Brahma" center line. The width of the golden shelf is five small units, and from outside edge to outside edge of these three it is 18 small units.

Above that [is a dark "Münnam" band with] a net of garlands (5) hanging down which come out of the mouths of sea dragons. It is  $4\frac{1}{2}$  small units wide starting  $3\frac{1}{2}$  small units left and right from the "Brahma" center line.

नेवि स्ट्रेन क्रम्यायम् का क्रम्यायम् विश्वास्य स्ट्रियायः विश्वास्य स्टर्श्वेन क्रम्य स्टर्शेन क्रम्य स्टर्य स्टर्श्वेन क्रम्य स्टर्श्वेन क्रम्य स्टर्श्वेन क्रम स्टर्य स्टर्श्वेन क्रम्य स्टर्श्वेन क्रम्य स्टर्श्वेन क्रम स्टर्य स्टर्य स्टर्श्वेन क्रम स्टर्य स्टर

देशःश्चेरःत्व श्चेत्रायः द्वात्व विष्ट्रायः स्वर्थः स्वरं विष्ट्रायः स्वर

त्तर्भेत्। न्तरः चल्ले ते स्कृतः तुः चेना स्त्रेः भ्रान्यः नाशुर्यः यत्त्रानाः स्वरः चे यान्यः व्यान्यः व्यान्य भ्रान्यः व्यान्यः वित्रः व भ्रान्यः वित्रः वित्र

द्वेन्द्रम् दक्ष्यार्य्। विश्वम् अ। विश्वम् अ। विश्वम् अ। विश्वम् विश्वम्यम् विश्वम्यम् विश्वम्यम्यम् विश्वम्यम् विश्वम्यम् विश्वम्यम् विश्वम् विश्वम् विश्वम् विश्वम

And above that are golden "Sernam" shelves (6) with two golden sea dragons with an opening of three small units from the "Brahma" center line and width of five small units, so from outside edge to outside edge there are 16 small units.

On top of those is [a portal lintel with bands of] "Tamik" horse-hoofs (7), "Rinchen" great jewels (8), again "Tamik" horse-hoofs (9) and a golden "Sernam" shelf (10) with similar colors and shapes as before, which [reach] evenly seven small units left and right of the "Brahma" center line, so from outside edge to outside edge it is 14 small units.

Above those are parapet balustrades "Dayab" (11) which reach five small units on each side of the "Brahma" center line, [so] there are ten small units from edge to edge. At both their left and right ends are two white lotus petals, whose height and width is a small unit each, arranged in the forms of an opening inner and outer [petal]. Inside of them is a flat parapet shelf (12) six small-units wide and even in height with the parapets.

These eleven bands are each three small units deep and held up by the four pillars [of the portal] and not connected with the door ways. With the height of the three golden "Sernam" [shelves] half a small unit each, the three horse-hoof "Tamik" [bands] one small unit each and the other five [bands including the parapets above the roof] each  $1\frac{1}{2}$  sizes [ $3 \times \frac{1}{2} + 3 \times 1 + 5 \times 1\frac{1}{2} = 12$ ], I wrote this according to a system [of heights] called "Five equal [bands] and two sets of three equal [bands]," as taught for the chalk line in the *Wang Shi Chugyün (Stream of the four Empowerments)*.

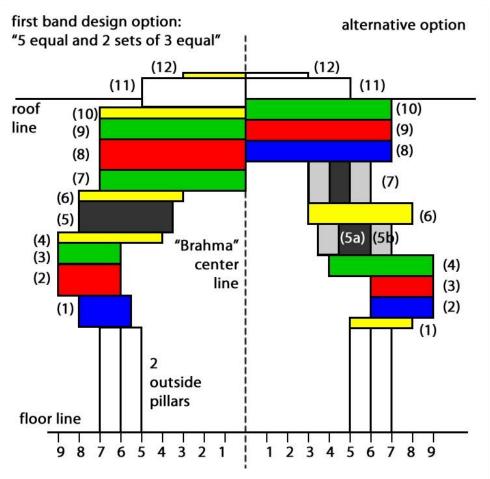
Please distinguish between this [system] of three dimensional visualization and our own system which uses the rule of "two equal [bands] and nine equal [bands]" (see picture below).

On the parapet [shelf] is a golden wheel which is three small units high and wide, and to the left and right of it are a golden male and female deer which are one small unit high and look with their eyes towards the top of the wheel. On each side next to their tails, on top of the inside of the parapets are monkeys, each holding a parasol. At the corners outside [of the parapets] are golden vases which are one small unit [high] and have victory banners placed in them. [On top of] the ends of the 3 golden shelves are also victory banners and waving [3-pointed] banners.



(বৃদ্ধিমামদ্মান্মান্মা "two equal and nine equal" portal band design)

अर्दे र:द:ह:ननशःरे:रे:खः



(illustration of two ways of portal band design)

To summarize the portals in brief:\*

(Above the [pillars on each side] are two rectangular golden "Sernam" shelves (*see illustration of portal, right side:* 1) which are three small units wide, from outside edge to outside edge it is 16 small units, and [the portal opening is] ten small units from their inside edge to inside edge.

Above that are a blue "Sharbu" band (2) ornamented with drip ornament vases, [and then] a jewel "Rinchen" band (3) with many fine jewels on a red ground, both bands are three small units wide and since they overhang the golden shelf on the outside by one small unit [on each side], from inside edge to inside edge [the opening] is twelve small units.

<sup>\*</sup> below follows an alternate description of the portal

नक्षित्र में त्र क्षेत्र क्

स्तर्भा स्त्राच्या विश्व क्षेत्राच्या स्त्राच्या स्त्राच स्त्राच्या स्त्राच्या स्त्राच्या स्त्राच्या स्त्राच्या स्त्राच्

चित्रं वित्राचित्राची श्री त्र का स्वराची श्री स्वराची स्वराची त्री त्र का स्वराची स्

नेते क्षेट्र-नुःश्वरः चुन्देव क्षेत्रा संगाना गुरुष सर्देता है [रे.] संगिद्धरः म्या चुट्रकः स्वतः नजुः नवि।

स्तः प्यन्तः प्यन्तः प्रश्चे । त्रिक्षः त्राः व्याप्यः वार्ष्यं । त्रिक्षः व्यन्तः प्रत्यः व्यन्तः व्यन्तः व्य द्रिक्षे । व्यविक्षः व्यक्षः व्यव्यक्षः व्यव्यक्षः व्यव्यक्षः व्यव्यक्षः व्यव्यक्षः व्यव्यक्षः व्यव्यक्षः व्यव

[पट.]ल.भ.म्यान्। सक्ष्मत्म। श्रूमत्त्रात्मक्ष्मत्त्रात्मक्ष्मत्त्रात्मक्ष्मत्याः अन्तर्भात्म। श्रूम्पः नेवे त्यर्भात्म। श्रूमत्याः वित्ताः वित्तर्भात्मत्त्राः अन्तर्भात्माः श्रूमत्याः अन्तर्भात्माः श्रूमत्यः अन्तर्भात्माः श्रूमत्यः अन्तर्भात्माः श्रूमत्यः अन्तर्भात्माः श्रूमत्यः अन्तर्भात्माः श्रूमत्यः अन्तर्भात्माः स्याप्तः अन्तर्भात्माः स्याप्तः अन्तर्भात्माः स्याप्तः अन्तर्भात्माः स्याप्तः अन्तर्भात्माः स्याप्तः अन्तर्भात्माः स्याप्तः स्यापतः Above those are [bands with] a green design of "Tamik" horse-hoof shapes (4), which are five units wide and from their inside edge to inside edge [the opening is] eight small units. The drip ornament, jewel and horse-hoof [bands] are all 18 small units from edge to edge.

Above that are the lower dark "Münnam" bands (5a) with posts (5b) which are 1 ½ small units high and one small unit thick. Each dark band itself [including the posts] is 3 ½ small units wide, they are 14 small units from outside edge to outside edge and the open space in between them is seven [small units].

Above that are "Varanda" [shelves] (6) whose own width is five small units, [the open space] between their inside edges is six small units, and from outside edge to outside edge there are 16 small units. Their colorful ground has a relief with the pennant banners that have the three split points.

Above that is the upper dark "Münnam" band with posts (7) which are one small unit thick and two high. The outside edge of the dark band is in line with the inside edge of the outer posts of the lower dark band, so from outside edge to outside edge [of the upper dark band] it is 12 units, and the upper [dark band] is three small units wide. Both the upper and lower dark bands have nets of strands and garlands.

Above that are three bands of "Sharbu" drip ornaments (8), "Rinchen" jewels (9) and "Tamik" horse-hoofs (10) each in their respective colors and designs as before and 14 small units going across.

On top is the parapet balustrade "Dayab" (11) five small units on both sides, so ten units [wide]. At both their left and right ends are two white lotus petals, whose height and width is a small unit, arranged in the forms of an opening inner and outer [petal].

Within the gap of six small units between them there is a white parapet shelf (12) which is even in height with the parapets. All these eleven shelves are three small units [deep] and at their ends are not connected with the entry way [side walls].

द्वायाम् स्कृत्याम् अर्देरावास्य स्वायास्य । स्वायास्य स्वायस्य स्वायास्य स्वायस्य स्वायास्य स्वयास्य स्वायास्य स्वायास्य स्वायास्य स्वयास्य स्वायास्य स्वायास्य स्वायास्य स्वायास्य स्वायास्य स्वायास्य स्वयायास्य स्वयायास्य स्

नेते स्ट्रेट नुश्चेत श्री मार्थ न त्र स्त्र स्त्र होता है ता स्त्र स्त्

Above the parapets is a golden wheel three small units high and wide, and on both its sides are a golden male and female deer who are one small unit [high] and look with their eyes towards the top of the wheel.

Outside of their tail ends above the inside of the parapets are monkeys who each hold a parasol.

Above the outside [corners] are one small unit high golden vases with victory banners and waving [three-pointed] banners coming out of them. At both the upper and lower dark bands at the ends of the two veranda shelves are victory banners and waving [three-pointed] banners.

In brief, each portal)\*

is abundant with ornaments: four victory banners, four [three-pointed] banners, and two parasols each, which add up to eight parasols, 16 victory banners and [three-pointed] banners, 32 in total and so on.

Underneath the portal the irregular [opening of the arch] has a shape of three eyes [bulging in three places: on both sides and on the top], and inside of it a canopy, a net of garlands, and so forth are beautifully [arranged].

On both sides of [each] portal, eight in total, are crossed vajras, and standing on top of their center navels are golden vases which are one door-size high and wide. Coming out of them are wish granting trees with seven branches complete with each of the seven royal emblems.

Above, from in between the clouds the upper bodies of Devaputras emerge, holding flower garlands and scattering them to the deities of the mandala.

Visualize that in the surrounding sky reside perfect beings in the forms of Tathagatas who have accomplished this path. This tradition of establishing the vast and open celestial palace of even height is well known as taught in the *Mandala Ritual of the Vajra Garland*.

<sup>\*</sup> here the alternative portal makeup ends and the original text continues

स्थित्राच्यः अक्ष्यः चर्टा।

यद्भाक्षः स्वरं चिश्वः स्वरं चर्द्धः स्वरं चरं स्वरं स

चलु-सूर्याश्चर्या श्वेर-श्रैशात्र्याः स्थ्र-श्चर्याः स्थ्र-श्चर्यः स्थ्यः स्थ्यः

सहस्यत्या नक्त्यत्वेषा स्वायत्या नक्त्यत्वेषा न्यायत्यात्रात्वेषाः स्वायत्यत्वाः स्वायत्यत्वाः स्वायत्याः स्वायत्याः स्वायत्याः स्वयत्याः स्वयः स्वयः स्वयः When using the chalk line of the Jonang tradition to raise the 3-dimensional [mandala], only the walls [without the moldings and entablatures] are 16 units high [in contrast to our own system where they are 13 small units], and the height of the moldings and ornamented entablatures is 13 small units [instead of 3], and also the wall height above the vestibules and entrance ways and so forth is 13 small units [adding up to a total height of 29].

Inside the vestibule at the height of 13 small units extend beams on top of which is [another] wall three small units high with beams [above], and moldings from which garlands, pendants, and so forth are flowing down, which [looks] amazing [on the] exact square [shapes].

Also above the entrance ways and so on at the height of 13 small units is the ceiling. One small unit from the side of the entrance ways, next to the ledge for offerings are [crossed] vajras whose navels are one small unit sized platforms even in height [with the ledge]. On top [of the navels] are vases one small unit in size with pillars coming out which together with the vases are five small units high. Above [the pillars] are golden shelves and so forth according to [the system of heights called] "two equal [bands] and nine equal [bands]." The lower tiers [of the dark bands] are not in line with the entrance way forming a square, and the top of the upper dark bands are even with the door ways.

And even though the appearance of the four [types of] tiers of golden [shelves], drip ornaments, bands and so forth, and the cooling design of the entry way roof is amazing and beautiful just as I explained, I don't know how to describe this, since I have not found reliable sources for the measurements.\*

<sup>\*</sup> Note that we were unable to clearly translate the description of the Jonang system since the Tibetan is not clear without further instruction and this system is not known by the lamas we were able to ask.

য়्ॐ

प्राचित्रः हो न्दरः पङ्कास्य न्यान् । हो न्याः स्वाधित्रः हो स्वाधितः स्वाधित्रः स्वाधित्रः स्वाधित्रः स्वाधित्रः स्वाधित्रः स्वाधित्रः स्वाधित्रः स्

क्रीयावश्वान्त्रः हिन्देश्वे स्थान्त्रः विश्वान्त्रः विश्वान्त्यः विश्वान्त्रः विश्वान्त्रः विश्वान्त्रः विश्वान्त्रः विश्वान्त्रः विश्वान्त्रः विश्वान्त्रः विश्वान्त्रः विश्वान्त्रः विश्वान्यः विश्वान्त्रः विश्वान्त्रः विश्वान्तः विश्वान्तः विश्वान्तः विश्वान्तः विश्वान्तः विश्वान्तः विश्वान्तः विश्वान्तः विश्वान्त

র্ষুমান গ্রুদানমা

न्त्रेन्यः द्वे स्यत्रः न्त्रे स्थन् । स्थन्यः । स्यन्यः । स्थन्यः । स्यन्यः । स्थन्यः । स्यन्यः । स्यन्यः । स्यन्यः । स्यन्यः । स्यन्यः । स्यन्यः । स्थन्यः । स्यन्यः । स्ययः ।

चक्री हैं यनक्री र्ननक्री अक्ट्रहेय.चक्री वीय.क्रुय.चक्री र्नू प्रश्नियक्री क्षेत्र.चक्री हिंग्यक्री हें प्रश्नियक्री हिंग्यक्री हि

Outside the [base of the large] crossed vajra and lotus that were described earlier is the vajra fence which is one small unit wide [and goes all the way around].

Outside of that is a one large unit wide [ring of] multicolored wisdom fire and also the protection circle and around its circumference the eight great charnel grounds.

Going counter-clockwise in the four directions starting in the east are (fierce and terrifying) Chandogra, (dense jungle) Gahvara [in the north,] (flaming vajra) Vajrajvala [in the west], Kankalin (with skeletons) [in the south], and clockwise [in the intermediate directions] from the north-east are Attattahāsa (ferociously cackling), (auspicious grove) Subhīshana [in the south-west], (terrifying darkness) Ghorandhakāra [in the north-west] and Kilikilārava (resounding with shrieks) [in the north-east].

At the charnel grounds called "Shamshana" in Sanskrit reside corpses who do the four types of activities: there are headless corpses roaming about, gagged and limp [corpses] standing [around], ones which have fallen over lying [around], and ones which are impaled on a stake doing their activities sitting down. Therefore this place of graves is called the charnel ground. The *Samvarodaya* says:

"Skeletons pierced by spears, hanging and their heads only half attached, the top of the skull taken off, [or] bald and grinning skulls and bones."

Such are the corpses, and because they are filled with a multitude of small bones, they have the particular characteristic of being extremely terrifying.

[There are] eight trees, eight guardians of the directions, eight Lokapala local protectors, eight rivers of compassion and eight nagas that live in them, eight clouds, eight mountains, eight stupas, and eight arhats and so forth.

बेशनक्त्रनाशुस्या

त्रीर त्यभावरीर चालेर देता। स्थान क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र स्यान क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र क्षेत

ब्रेट्स्या वाल्यास्त्रित्यास्त्रित्यास्त्रित्यास्त्रित्यास्त्रित्यास्त्रित्यास्त्रित्याः विद्याप्ति विद्यापति विद्य

चक्चरा क्रिनक्चरायाव्यस्यते स्था क्रिस्स्य व्यास्य विद्यास्य प्रमान्य विद्यस्य विद The Samvarodaya teaches about the eight [trees]:

In the east and so on are the trees Shirsha, Ashvadatha, the banana tree Kankela, and the special Chutha
Mango tree [in the cardinal, and]
Prata and likewise Karanja,
Lawataparka and Sarthivatha [in the inter-cardinal directions].

The eight guardians of the directions are yellow Lord Indra [riding on] an elephant, yellow wealth god Kuvera on a human, white water god Varuna on a sea dragon, blue Lord of Death Yamaraja on a buffalo, white all-mighty Shiva on a bull, red fire-god Agnideva on a goat, blue cannibal Raksha on a corpse, and the smoke-colored wind god Vayu riding on a stag. All of them have a mount, one face, and four arms, the first two with joined palms, and in their second right respectively Indra holds a Vajra, Kuvera a mongoose, Varuna a snake lasso, Yamaraja a staff, Shiva a trident, Agnideva a garland and an anointment [vase], Raksha a sword, and Vayu holds a banner. Their second left holds a skull cup and embraces their own consort. Their own customary ornaments are all

The local guardians have the face of the mount of the guardian of their respective direction. They have a wrathful appearance and miracle powers, in their right they hold an offering torma and in their left a skull cup, and their upper bodies emerge from the trees.

complete as laid out extensively in the Samvarodaya.

The eight nagas who live in the eight rivers are white snake goddess Vāsuki, red naga king Takshaka, blue Karkōtaka, white lotus Varuna, white great lotus Rājpadma, Anantaha with many colors, white Kulika of noble family, and yellow naga king of shells Shankpāla. They each have their own color, hand implements, and [above each of them is] a great cloud in the sky [which is called respectively] Roar, Great Roar, Wrath, Turbulence, Stable, Fullness, Showering Down, and Fierce, [these are the] eight.

र्स्र-र-प्र-राम्यम् प्रमान्दर्गः निष्ठ्या प्रमान्यम् । स्राप्ति निष्ठाः म्यान्यः स्रम् निष्ठाः निष्ठा

चित्रायम् । से निक्तायम्

मुन्दः खुन्यः सः स्वान्तः स्व

Bands of lightning are flashing and thunder is roaring. Furthermore there are eight mountains made of jewels: multi-colored Mt. Meru, green Mandhara, white Mt. Kailash, yellow Mt. Malaya, black Great Might, yellow Having Scent of Incense, white Snowy [Mountain], and blue Shri Parvata.

And on [each] mountain is a stupa: White Vajra, Composite Vajra, Passionate Vajra, Black Vajra, Vajra Mind, Vajra Body, Vajra Jewel, and Vajra Dharma, all of them white, as stated in the *Samvarodaya*.

As explained earlier [for] the first four you should turn counter-clockwise starting from the east, and [for] the latter four you should turn clockwise starting from the north-east.

And [there are] tantric practitioners who are naked and have overgrown hair, ornamented by the five mudras [of bone jewelry], holding a skull cup and khatvanga, and adorned with a skull at their crown. [All] are looking up single-pointedly towards the Bhagavan. In accord with this understanding it is very reasonable when the Tibetan texts teach to meditate on [these as] the eight great Indian Siddhas. [Starting] from the east meditate on Indrabhuti, Kukkuripa, Padmavajra, Nagarjuna, Saraha, Dombhiva, Vajra Ghantapa, and Luhipa.

Furthermore there are eight fires and also the Samvarodaya says:

"Raven, Owl, and Vulture,
male and female Jackal,
male and female Hawk,
Lion Face and Tiger Face,
Fierce Face and Lady with Terrifying Face,
Snake and Ox Head,
Two Faced and so forth are roaming in the directions.

क्रियान्ति क्रिक्ता स्ट्राम् वित्र क्रियान्ति स्ट्रिक्त स्ट्राम् स्ट्रिक्त स्ट्रिक्त

व्यक्षाम्यायम् । व्यक्ष्यम् । व्यक्षयम् । व्यक्षयमः । व्यवक्षयमः ।

Meditating in this way on the terrifying aspects, give rise to the supporting form of the celestial palace along with the charnel grounds outside.

#### 2.3.2.2.3.3.2.2. Generating the supported deities

To generate the supported deities: on a swirling red sun disk at the navel of the lotus in the celestial palace I arise as the glorious Heruka whose body color is clear deep sky-blue like a fresh sesame flower, having one face, three eyes and so forth, as written [in the sadhana].

The five bone mudras are: (1) on the crown of the head is an eight-spoked wheel of human bones with a precious stone planted in the middle which is completed and marked by a five-pronged vajra on top. In between the spokes of the wheel long locks of hair are drawn through and bound in a top knot, in the center of which a precious gem and vajra are invisibly concealed. Above the rim of the wheel are two vajra garlands, an upper and a lower, which are joining together [five] dried skulls which have jewel crown ornaments on top. There also are (2) a necklace of bone garlands, (3) bracelets on arms and legs, (4) ear rings, (5) a belt, so [together with] (6) being smeared with human ashes – there are six charnel ground ornaments.

Furthermore there is also the [Brahmin thread] offering scarf, a long garland of fifty fresh human heads, and other ornaments easily understood in the description [in the sadhana text].

The right leg is stretched out [and stands] between the breasts of red Kalaratri and the left leg is in slightly bent stance, trampling down on the bent back [fore]head\* of black Bhairava.

The yum (consort) Vajrayogini is described with red body color and so on, which is easily understood [in the sadhana]. The five [bone ornament] mudras are the same as the ones of the yab (male consort) except for the smearing of human ashes. Her left leg is stretched out together with the right leg of the yab, and her right leg is clasping the waist of the yab. The yab and yum are magnificent like the fire at the end of an eon.

<sup>\*</sup> while some thangkas and texts specify the neck, according to HH Drikung Chetsang Rinpoche it should be the forehead since the head is bent backwards

चत्ती स्यान्त क्षी स्थान क्षित्र विषय क्षित् विषय क्षित्र विषय क्षित्य विषय क्षित्र विषय क्षित

चर्चम् [पद्ध्योत्रा]म् । इस्राचरानक्चिरास्रक्षेत्रास्ये प्यापारास्यापार्थे प्रकृताम् विष्यास्यारक्षेत्राम् । सक्ष्यास्यार्थे

र्देव:यान्व:यायायायायायान्त:यवे स्वत्यायी यान्व:याया ने प्यता यार्डे वे वे यान्व:यह याया नुयायायायायायायायायान्तःयवे वे यान्व:न्य्यायायाःन्य:न्यः याद्वः विकास

यद्र विश्व स्वर्थ स्वर्य स्वर्थ स्वर्य स्वर्थ स्वर्य स्वर्थ स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्थ स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर

बट्ट क्रुन श्रेस्य त्री श्रेट खट प्रता स्ट्री स्ट्रिस स्ट्रिस स्ट्रिस स्ट्रिस स्ट्री स्ट्रिस स्ट्रि

র্বরার্মনার্ম্যরমার্মর

On the petals in the cardinal directions are in front Dākinī, whose body is deep blue [representing] the completely purified water element, on the left or in the north the green Lāmā or beautiful maiden, who is the completely purified air element, behind or in the west red Khandarohā who is the completely purified fire element, to the right or in the south yellow Rūpinī who is the completely purified earth element. All four have one face and two arms and so forth as described, and [hold] a khatvānga at the elbow as taught in the 9<sup>th</sup> chapter of the *Abhidhana*:

Up on top [the khatvāngas] are completed by a five-pronged vajra symbolizing the five wisdoms. Below that are [three] human heads which are described as dried up and white , old and red, and moist and red [or sometimes] also black, to symbolize body, speech, and mind. A crossed vajra below symbolizes the four auspicious activities [of pacifying, increasing, magnetizing, and destructive]. Below are a vase of nectar [which symbolizes] the vessel of bodhicitta, a small bell and a three-pointed banner hanging down.

It has a white handle with eight sides which symbolize the eight emancipations\* and a single-pointed [vajra at the bottom], and it is held in the armpit at the side of the body.

The [four dakinis] are standing on a corpse seat in the posture of the extended right leg. On the seat of the main deity are Bhairava and Kalaratri who are alive while the seats of the retinue of the four [dakinis] are asserted to be corpses.

On the lotus petals in the intermediate directions [and also the center] you need to clearly visualize vases filled with the five nectars of feces, urine, blood, brains, and semen, and on top of them skull cups filled with the five meats of human, ox, dog, horse, and elephant. It is stated in the *Abhidhana*:

"Placed in the four intermediate directions [and in the center] on five vases with the five [nectars of] immortality are also the vessels of bodhicitta."

<sup>\*</sup> the emancipation of regarding what has form to be form, the emancipation of regarding the formless as having form, the emancipation of the repulsive and clearing away hindrances, the four emancipations of the four formless states, and the emancipation of cessation

ने भूर हेत न्दर नहेत सदे न्ये वार्षे संविद्धान्य नामा स्वित्त स्वार्थ स्वार्थ

मश्रमा न्यामञ्जूषाय सुःद्वेयायाहेशः श्री अत्यादि स्याश्रम्य व्याप्ता स्या स्याप्ता स्यापता स्याप्ता स्यापता स्याप्ता स्याप्ता स्यापता स्यापता

स्यात्वर पुराक्षेत्र स्याप्तर । स्याका यहा वा ह्या

चर्च्यान्तर्स्या चर्ने कूट्याहेश्वर्ध्य क्षेत्रः स्वात्त्रेयाः स्वात्त्रः स्वात्त्रः स्वात्त्रः स्वात्त्रः स्व द्रित्रः प्रित्त्रः चर्ने कूट्याहेश्वरः स्वात्त्रः स्वातः क्षेत्रः स्वातः स्वतः स्वातः स्वात

म् प्यत्ति स्थान्त्र स्यान्त्र स्यान्त्र स्यान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्था

दे : क्रें अप्रादे प्रत्र अप्तुप्त प्राप्त दे दे स्रु अप्राय व्यक्ति वा स्वाप्त व्यक्ति ।

In this way visualize all of the support of the mandala and the supported deities in minute detail, clearly and distinctly present with their body color, implements, ornaments, and so forth.

### 2.3.2.2.3.3. Meditation on the purity

Third is the meditation on the purity taught by both Luhipa and Ghantapa at this point. Krishnacāria taught "inviting the wisdom [deities], [their] entry, the empowerment, and making offerings at the end." The *Samvarodaya* says:

"Visualize the deities until getting tired and recite the mantras. When getting tired [of the visualization] meditate on the purity,"

And the commentary of the great Lord Atisha explained four reasons why this needs to be done here:

"Because first, [meditation on the purity] shows the host of Heruka deities as the nature of Dharmakaya, [second,] it overcomes attachment to the deities, [third,] bliss and emptiness are expressed as non-dual, and [fourth,] the Mahayana and the [Secret Mantra] path are known as one and the same."

The meaning of "Mindfulness of the body is the Dākinī," and so on in the sadhana is explained in Lord Atisha's commentary:

"The wisdom of knowing non-arising which [realizes that] the four aggregates of body, feeling, mind, [and phenomena] have a nature like magical appearances is inseparable from compassion. In fact the deities are each of these [aggregates]."

In your mind gain certainty thinking that this meditation results in this purity and so forth.

# निवेश में निवेश के देश द्वारा प्रति क्षुन विकास की माने के कि की कि बुग्रायानः वेशास्य स्वाकुर हेन्। য়ৢॱऄॕॴॴॸऻॾॖॱढ़॓ऄॣॸॱड़ॗॕऻ भ्रामश्रदः श्रमशर्दे हे चित्र नक्ष्मश्रा गश्रमगश्रम दे दे 'धे मो मश्रम। यार.रया.रय.श्रय.वी.र.सप्ट.र्मयाया। बेशनाशुरशम्य। नार्डे प्रविराधस्य उत् ग्री ही विराह्म नवे प्रतिराय के प्राप्त हों अ<u>च</u>ीत'म'मङ्ग'न्सर'सँदे'ख्ने'नर'खुःन्सर'सँ। श्लेर'नर'श्लुक्ष्मिर'सूर्वेनर्स्। षर-दे-हेर-वरा . พ.(<del>४८</del>.)र्डे.चक्चेर.सप्तु.श.चूच.रटा। ने निव्याना निक्षेत्र निक्षा में भी धीयो नरसार्देर गुरुषाया। धी मो से से पर प्या प्रमान मान क्षें दरद्वास्य स्व क् त्री ्रै :क्रुँ :यत :दर :पर :दवा :ध्रुव ।। गशुरशम्य। वर्डेस्राध्वायर्भाग्रीःश्वेरागरार्षे ज्ञानगरार्थे। सर्वे वेरावासाने सेरावा र्सेन्या में कर्मत में द्वा यन दे र व्यानमें दा दे न दे दे दि र वया यतः द्वैं :द्वैं:द्वैं:दें:कैं:क्वें:क्वर्या थे मे ने निर्मा षे यो अ ५८ ई है ५५८ ।। कुँ दरम्बर हेशः श्रूरः वःषी। दयःवर्धे रःश्रें दे द्वाः हः नव्या উমাবাধ্যুদ্রমানাপ্রুদ্য

#### 2.3.2.2.3.3.4. *Putting on the armor*

Fourth is the armor. Ghantapa's Sadhana of the Wishfulfilling Jewel says:

"At the heart highest wisdom completely transforms into a multicolored lotus with a sun [disk] and a HŪNG on top, the three syllables [of **OM** ĀH HŪNG] are the mantras which excellently accomplish blessing vajra body, speech and mind, these three."

At the crown of the main deity and all the retinue on a moon disk is a white OM, at their throat at the navel of a lotus is a red  $\bar{A}H$ , and at the heart at the navel of a crossed vajra is a blue  $H\bar{U}NG$ . The same text says:

"Produce the seed syllables of the eight classes [of gods and spirits]:

OM, NA MA, SVA HA, BO SHAT, HUNG HŪNG and PHAT, [joining with] the vowels [HA, HI, HU, HE, HO, HANG] without anything in between, [i.e. OM HA, NA MA HI, SVA HA HU etc.] each of [the six heroes] is established as completely pure with their respective [seed] syllables."

At the heart of the Bhagavan is white **OM HA**, at the head yellow **NA MA HI** and so forth, the armor of the six heroes is arranged on the yab Heruka. And similarly the same text says:

"Combining the syllables
PHAT, HANG, HRING, HRING, HANG, and OM,
with the syllables BAM, YAM,
MAM, HRING,
HŪNG, and PHAT,
these are described as the six [armor] syllables of Vajrayogini."

स्याः स्थाः स्था

नश्चिम। नश्चित्रः स्वामाने खेरे र्टर न्वेरः से राज्यसः खेरे ते श्चिमः सक्तरं स्वामः स

# स्या **ये भी सम्यन्ध्या के सम्यन्ध्यम्य सम्या**

वेगन्ता गुनःश्चेन्यमा

स्तर में स्याद में रास समयात मृत्रा स्त्रा से प्रत्रा सह वा हे सामयात मृत्रा स्त्रा स्त्र स्त्रा स्त्र स्त्रा स्त्र At the consort's navel is red **OM BAM**, at the heart blue **HANG YAM** (or **YOM**) and so forth, [those are the] six heroines arranged on the consort Varahi.

To elaborate on that, meditate that through the complete transformation of these mantras [arise] the [six armor] deities with their respective body color, hand implements, and so forth.

[Or] to abbreviate, stabilize the conviction that the [armor] deities are inseparable from the mantras.

2.3.2.2.3.3.5. Entering of the wisdom beings and empowerment Fifth, regarding entry of the wisdom beings and bestowal of the empowerment the sadhana says:

"With the light of the HŪNG at the heart the primordial wisdom mandala...,"

empowerment deities, and the (assembly of) goddesses (of) the outer, inner and secret offering are invited, obstructers are banished, and drinking water [and so on] is offered. Also [the sadhana] explains that [they are] invited by the mantras and mudras: "With the light from the HŪNG which resides on the sun at the heart the wisdom deities, the assemblies of heroes and dakinis who stay in the ten directions, and the empowerment deities are invited."

Voice the sound PHEM, and [form] a mudra described as:

"the index fingers coiled [around each other, like hooks], the middle fingers straight and joined [at the tip], and the thumbs [also touching] firmly as a well joined vajra, then excellently placing it at the center of the forehead and turning it, circling to encompass the entire surroundings."

### All Conducts says:

"Set the feet down and look up, coil the index fingers, and with the sound **PHEM** summon the heroes and dakinis dwelling in the worlds and realms of the ten directions,"

द्युर्य.सर.ह्य.हे। अ.हे.स्या त्रियाःक्ची जयाःसतुःत्रियाःक्चे.शूर्यायाःयशीरयःसया लु.लेयाःसतुःश्क्र्यायाःसर्थेःक्चीःययःस्यासरः इयाःक्ची जयाःसतुःत्रियाःक्चे.शूर्यायाःयशीरयःसया लु.लेयाःसतुःश्क्र्यायाःसर्थःक्चीःयाःस्याः

लु.लुश.प्र्रू.स्य.स्य.स्य.स्या। इंचाय.र्टर.सिया.क्येंद्र.सुर्य.स्या।

लेशन्त्रहरूष भेशन्त्रहरूष विश्वास्त्रहरूष विश्वास्त्रहरूष विश्वास्त्रहरूष विश्वास्त्रहरूष विश्वास्त्रहरूष विश्व

अर्केन्:न्दः नर्केन्:न्दः न्वदः प्यदः नक्षुरः ।

विश्वाश्वरश्चर्या स्टामी श्वाश्वाश्वर्या श्वर्या श्वर्य श

इं:र्हुं नै:र्ने:वेश:ग्रु:नश्य

न्गुनान्दःनाबुनान्दःनकेदशन्दःअहेश।

श्री.ट.क्यि.पह्ये.हे। श्री.ट.क्यि.पह्ये.हे। इं. क्या.यं.व्या.क्या.यं.त्येयाया.यं.यंयाया.यं.यंयाया त्ये.क्या.यं.यंयाया.यं.व्याय्यायं.यं.व्यायः.यं.

त्त्र्याः कुर्याः व्यान्त्र्याः स्त्र्याः स्त्र्याः स्त्राः स

क्रिंश म्रम्भ रहन्यादेन स्मेत माम्म रहे स्मेत स्

and so on as explained in the preliminary torma ritual. Due to the mudras taught for the feet, eyes, hands, and speech the assemblies of wisdom deities are certain to arrive in the sky in front. Luhipa said:

"Knowing how to perform the mantras and mudras, perfectly contemplate the wisdom mandala."

[And] the *Abhidhana* says about inviting the wisdom and empowerment deities in front:

"Seeing the wisdom mandala make offerings and praise, and also the empowerment is bestowed."

Visualize that from one's heart emanate Piwangma and the other goddesses making offerings, and offer with the mudras and mantras of the 16 wisdom consort [offering goddesses]. [And] as Ghantapa says:

"By performing **JA HŪNG BAM HO** summon, accept entry, bind, and please."

With the four mudras of an iron hook and so forth contemplate that by saying JA the wisdom deities gather above the crown of your head, by saying HŪNG they enter the crown, saying BAM they become inseparable [from the commitment beings], and saying HO all of them are extremely pleased. After the wisdom deities have entered hold the divine pride.

With both hands, the left and right, circle the desirables mudra\* five times at the heart center, and finally perform the embracing [mudra] and recite **OM YOGA SHUDDHAH** and so on which comes from the *Samvarodaya* and is the mantra of the wisdom deities and the commitment deities joined together inseparably. It means: **OM YOGA SHUDDHAH SARVA DHARMAH** "All phenomena [are] pure in the yoga," **YOGA SHUDDHOH - HANG** "I am pure in the yoga."

Rest evenly in the awareness of this primordial reality of abiding of all phenomena.

<sup>\*</sup> similar to the Pekor turning lotus mudra

धे ने अन्यन्दर खेत्र हेना श्रुत न्दर अन्यने न्दर खेटे नवित्र मिने न्या अन्य हेर श्रु न

न्ति हे नक्ष्रि क्षेत्र क्ष्या क्ष्य क्ष्

तर्ने अर्थे। विश्वरायम् प्रतिराधेराक्ष्यथायात्र क्ष्यात्र विष्ट्राचे विष्ट्र

कुब्रस्तुः स्ट्याः कुट्टाः श्रीः स्ट्राः कुंब्रः कुंब्रः कुंब्रः कुंब्रः स्ट्राः स्ट्

स्त्रम् त्याः स्त्री स्त्रम् त्याः स्त्री स्त्रम् स्त्रम् त्याः स्त्रम् स्त्रम् त्याः स्त्रम् त्याः स्त्रम् त्याः स्त्रम् त्याः स्त्रम् स्त्रम्

The 16 wisdom consort [offering goddesses] offer the five enjoyments [of the senses] to the empowerment deities and Tathagatas and so forth which were invited together with the wisdom deities.

And because you supplicate: "May all the Tathagatas directly bestow the empowerment on me," the four female gatekeepers, Ankushi (Hook), [Pāsi (Noose), Srinkhalā (Chain), and Ghantā (Bell)], and the four keepers of the intermediate directions, Yamadhādi (Earth) and so forth, these eight dispel obstructing forces.

As explained earlier for the protection circle, even though it is taught in other tantras that the wrathful deities dispel obstructers, here the female gate keepers and keepers of the intermediate directions dispel the obstructers, [but] you should know that they are identical in essence to the wrathful deities.

The 24 heroes such as Töpedumbu (Skull Pieces) and so forth recite auspicious [verses] and the 24 heroines such as Prāchanda (Ferocious Lady) sing vajra songs.

Visualize that Dākini and so forth who are the nature of the four consorts Buddhalochana (Buddha Eyes) and so forth, together with Varahi take the jewel vases filled with nectar and bestow the empowerment along with the mantras and recite: "Just as we washed the Tathagatas when they were born..." The meaning of the mantra is: OM SARVA "All," TATHAGATA "Thus Gone Ones," ABHISHEKATA "directly bestow the empowerment," SAMAYA SHRĪYE HŪNG "To the glory of the commitments!" From the nectar of the empowerment flowing into the crown of the head, all deities become the nature of great bliss.

From the overflowing water swirling at the crown of the head [arises] Akshobya for the Bhagavan [Heruka], sealing the cause with the fruit, for Varahi [arises] Vairochana, sealing the Dharmakaya with the form body, and for the four dakinis [arises] Ratnasambhava. Each of these are taught in order to determine their Buddha families.

Finally the empowerment deities dissolve into you, as Atisha explained the intention of the *Abhidhana*:

द्यःक्ष्माः क्ष्माः स्त्राच्याः वर्षे वर्षायाः वर्षे वर्षायाः वर्षे वर्

# **इनामा मर्केन्डिममङ्ग्रिमनदी** मल्दिम्समा

द्येत्यःतिर्दरःविः इस्ययः ग्रेस्। द्येत्यः त्विनः न्यः प्यः प्यः प्यः स्वेत्यः स्वेत्यः स्वेत्यः स्वेत्यः स्वेत्यः स्वेत्यः स्वेत्यः स्वेत्यः स्व

वेशःयशिदशःसम्भ वियोशःयोदःसम्बर्धः द्वीःस्ट्रेन्चे स्त्यः विदःस्तरः विश्वे स्वरं स्व

त्रुसन्तरः न्दः यश्चे यः नवे : श्रुं स्ट्रेस् सर्हे न् सर्हे न सर्हे न

द्रम्म् क्रैं अक्ट्री लक्ट्रैं श्र्में श्र्में श्र्में श्र्में श्रम् विश्व क्ष्यं विश्व क्ष्यं विश्व क्ष्यं क्ष्यं विश्व क्ष्यं क्ष्यं विश्व क्ष्यं क्ष्यं

In this way bestowing the empowerment clears away obstacles, obscurations, and [misconceptions of] the lower vehicle, [one becomes] a proper vessel for reciting [mantras] and meditating, one is empowered to accomplish the four [Buddha] activities of pacifying and so forth, bodhicitta and commitments which have declined are restored, and it becomes an extraordinary reason to receive an empowerment from the Buddha in the future.

### 2.3.2.2.3.3.6. The offering and praise

Sixth, regarding offering and praise the main text says:

"The six goddesses and four [dakinis] perform the genuine outer, inner, and secret offering and excellently praise the mandala deities."

#### 2.3.2.2.3.3.6.1. The offering

Thus as taught, imagine that from the light of the seed syllable at the heart arise goddesses who hold the offering substances and offer them to the mandala [deities] who completely fill the realm of space. This has four sections:

the outer offering which is connected to the vase empowerment, the offering nectar connected to the secret empowerment, the offering of meditative absorption in the four joys connected to the wisdom empowerment, and the suchness offering connected to the word empowerment.

#### 2.3.2.3.3.6.1.1. Vase empowerment and connected outer offering

First the outer offering [starting with] the four waters of ARGHAM and so forth: drinking water is [for] drinking, washing water is for washing the face or [represents] the implements for the face-rinsing ritual, sprinkling water is sprinkling cleansing [water] to clean filth and soothe discomforts, and foot water [represents] the implements to wash the hands and feet. These four waters are offered in many different ways during the frontal [generation in which you visualize the deity in front of yourself], vase [generation in which the mandala is visualized in a vase], the fire offering to the deities, and so forth.

मिर्क्सः [मिर्वः] स्था क्षुं इसस्यस्त्रे संर्थे स्थितः क्षुं स्टः त्यः नक्षे सस्यस्य मिर्वः कुः निर्वः क्षुं स्य स्वरः स्वरं मिर्वः कुः स्वरं स्

स्वायान्त्र स्ट्रास्त्र स्वायान्त्र स्वायान्त्र स्वायान्त्र स्वायान्त्र स्वायान्त्र स्वायान्त्र स्वायान्त्र स् सक्ति स्वायान्त्र स्

माहेशमा मह्दः हे मळे द्रामही दर मळे द्रा हो द्राम्य माहेशमा माहिता हो प्राप्त माहेशमा महिता हो प्राप्त माहेशमा महिता हो प्राप्त माहेशमा महिता हो प्राप्त माहेशमा स्वाप्त स्वा

नर्डसाध्यायन्यान्यात् क्षेत्रायात् स्थरात् हो। भारासाय्यायम् । भारासायस्यायम् । भारासायस्यायस्यायस्यायस्य । नर्जन्ते स्थायस्य स्थायस्य स्थायस्य । नर्जन्ते स्थायस्य स्य स्थायस्य स्यायस्य स्थायस्य स्यायस्य स्थायस्य स्थायस्य स्थायस्य स्थायस्य स्थायस्य स्थायस्य स्थायस्य स्थायस्य स्यायस्य स्थायस्य स्थायस्य स्थायस्य स्थायस्य स्थायस्य स्यायस्य स्यायस्य स्थायस्य स्यायस्य स्थायस्य स्थायस्य स्थायस्य स्थायस्य स्थायस्य स्थायस्य स्य स्थायस्य स्यायस्य स्थायस्य स्यायस्य स्यायस्य स्थायस्य स्थायस्य स्यायस्य स्यायस्य स्यायस्य स Since also in Indian texts there are many different ways of arranging [the offerings], it seems that Chakrasamvara's own system and other systems are combined in some practices. Even though I don't see any reason for not needing to practice [these offerings] during the self-generation [in which you visualize yourself as the deity], it is said that there are only few practitioners [who do the offerings during the self generation].

After that come flower offerings and so forth, which are the five sense enjoyments: flowers for [throwing on or putting a garland around] the head, incense for the nose, butter lamps for the eyes, ointment for the body, food for the tongue, and music for the ears, [these] are offered with devotion. The mudras are as explained earlier for the blessing of the offerings.

When doing the Pekor [turning lotus] mudra, visualize that from one's heart spread goddesses, and when doing each of the offering mudras they are making offerings to the deities in each of their abodes. At the end along with the Pekor mudra snap your fingers [with the palms] facing inwards [towards oneself as the deity]. Imagine that the deities are pleased by this and the [offering] goddesses dissolve into yourself.

The meaning of the mantra is as explained earlier for the [offerings to the] field of accumulation: "Glorious Blood Drinker, together with your retinue, please each of you accept the drinking water!" [Perform the mudras] similarly for the washing water, sprinkling water, water for the feet, and so forth. And as before the 16 wisdom consort [offering] goddesses are spreading out [while] one makes offerings with the mantras and mudras.

### 2.3.2.2.3.3.6.1.2. Secret empowerment and connected nectar offering

Second, for the nectar offering in the right hand hold up the inner offering nectar which has been blessed [at the beginning of the sadhana]. Ghantapa says:

"From the syllable **HŪNG** on the tongues of the Bhagavan and yoginis arises a three-pronged white vajra, from which comes a hollow tube with a hole merely a barley grain wide through which the assembled deities draw up the nectar.

Imagine that they are satisfied by drinking the nectar."

बेरानाः भूम। भूष्मरा उन् ग्रीः भूषारा हूँ ।यस में हे प्राप्तः में जीश्रसानने हे तस में निमान र्रे भू गुवे क्राय उत् क्री य नर्र क्रे द्रस्य त्या मर्थे व नर्रा क्राय के विषय व क्रिका ही ह र्सेन्य नहें न स्नय में देखें और अर्थ न प्रत्य के से प्रते न प्रति के से से प्रति के से से प्रति के से यु:बु:सा रद:नविदा अड्ड:में नद्याकेदा अकः दर्वे:वेश:दर। औं:खु:हूँ। बेशनार्षेद्रमदे अमेन भ्रेद्रमी अदर सकें द्रद्र अमेन अन्ति र रेशम अप्ति प्रा <u> २८.सू.सूचायाच दे.र्याचारीयाची.सूचाया २८.ची.श्र.चटु.स्याचास्टर्जीयासकूरी ट्रायया</u> <u>ॅ</u>र्स : १ तकर : त्र श : दी श : त्र : स्व इन्वदे न्नुः साह्यन्त्रन्ता विक्रां के स्वराह्य विक्रां निक्रां स्वराह्य स्वराह्य स्वराह्य स्वराह्य स्वराह्य स क्षें नहं ने रें उं त नरा अनिय वर्ते सामति वे से रामें के तुने [मी ने दे के नाम वारा नाम साम नन्नायान्यायकेंद्र। सून्। कैं यानुगान्यायाने यान्यानें केत्यें स्थे सर्वोदारें द्रा कें यानु गु'खें दग'र्से केद'र्से भे ब्रंसे ५८। कें सम्इस्म्य प्यापकें सङ्ग्रेट वस्तर उद्देशन इस्रयाची समर प्रत्या निष्ठा प्रत्या स्थान स्थान

**गशुस्रमा गस्रम्सर्केन्द्री** देखानु विनर्भाग्रीश

द्यन् कृते सर्के ५ वर्षे चे के के अर्था।

यग्रानश वृत्रान्त्रः क्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः व्या क्षेत्रः त्या क्षेत्रः त्या व्यापानश वृत्रः त्या क्षेत्रः त्या क्षेत्रः त्या क्षेत्रः त्या व्यापानश वृत्रः त्या क्षेत्रः त्या क्षेत्रः त्या व्यापानश व्यापान

Thus from the HŪNG [on the] tongues of all deities [arises] a three-pronged white vajra. From its tip visualize a white light in a tubular shape by which the nectar is drawn up and consumed. Recite the mantra OM AMRITA and so on, which means: OM AMRITA "nectar of liberation," SVĀDA "taste," SVABHĀVA "nature," ATMAKO "personification," A HANG "I am," and OM ĀH HŪNG.

Thus sprinkle drops of the inner offering with the left ring finger, offering it [to the deities] one after another.

First offer the initial offering drops to your own root lamas of the three times and ten directions, then beginning with Vajradhara offer to the lineage lamas one after another, applying **OM AH HŪNG** to their names, up to the All Pervading Lord (Heruka), Ruler of the Mandala who is the root lama. Even though this offering to the lamas is not taught in the Indian texts, it is good to do, since it is mentioned in the Tibetan texts.

Then [offer to] the actual essential yidam with OM SHRĪ VAJRA HE HE RU RU KAM..., to the essential consort with OM VAJRA VAIROCANA... and the essential four dakinis with OM DĀKINI..., applying the three syllables OM ĀH HŪNG [to each], and similarly to the great black protector Mahakala with OM MAHĀKĀLĀYA..., to the great black goddess Mahakali with OM MAHĀKĀLĪ..., and to all the Dharma protectors with OM SARVA DHARMAPALAYA... Thus offer, sprinkling [the nectar] with devotion towards each of them by attaching the three syllables at the end to all [of their name mantras].

2.3.2.2.3.3.6.1.3. Wisdom empowerment and connected offering of the Four Joys Third the secret offering: the venerable Ghantapa says:

"No doubt through this offering of mudras one immediately attains the accomplishments!"

Regarding the way [to do] this: from the state where the yab's secret place of the vajra is not perceived, a white HŪNG becomes a five-pointed vajra. Its jewel\* is marked by an OM, and since its opening is blocked by a yellow PHAT, the drops cannot flow out.

<sup>\*</sup> glans of the penis/vajra

धुअःश्चीःग्रभरःनःश्चेःन्श्चेग्रभःमःत्यश्चःम् असःमें त्यन्तःसःन्धुन्यः वेतुःवत्रुःस्रभःसळ्द्रःम। यदेःनवेःमें स्मृत्वननःमवेःहःष्येग्नन्समःमें स्मायःक्ष्वःमःनस्म।

स्टर्न्तव्याः(स्)व्री स्टर्न्नव्याः(स्)व्री स्टर्न्नव्याः(स्)व्री स्टर्न्नव्याः(स्)व्री स्टर्न्नव्याः स्टर्ने

निवा ने मिं त है न श्री अर्के न म के त में है। अत मा है अर मा

सर्वान्द्रिः स्र

र्टायविद्यसेट्यिः याद्यस्य स्थित्रस्य स्था।

ब्राधिः श्रेट्यः र्से स्था चेट्या।

दे दे सकेट्या के द्यार पर्ट्या।

स्या क्रिया के स्था स्था स्था स्था क्रिया के स्था क्रिया क्रिय

म्राप्त क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र क्षेत

From the state where the yum's secret place is not perceived, visualize an eight-petaled lotus whose pollen bed is marked by an **A** and the channel of descending Rakta nectar (menstrual blood) which is the nature of bliss marked by a red **H**R**ī** syllable.

When the yab and yum enter into the union of absorption,<sup>39</sup> bodhicitta descends from the crown of the head to the throat bringing joy. It descends to the heart bringing supreme joy. It descends to the navel bringing special joy. When it reaches the tip of the vajra jewel the bodhicitta [drop] causes the experience of co-emergent great bliss without emission.<sup>40</sup>

Because all the assemblies of deities experience bliss as well, perform the turning of the five desirables [mudra] along with the embracing [mudra] and recite OM SARVA and so on. The mantra meaning is: OM SARVA TATHĀGATA "all the Thus Gone Ones," ANURĀGANA "passion," VAJRA SVABHĀVA "nature of the vajra," ATMAKO "personification," A HANG "I am." Thus enter into the state of equality, the true meaning of inseparable bliss and emptiness, for a long time.

### 2.3.2.2.3.3.6.1.4. Word empowerment and connected offering of suchness

Fourth is the great offering of suchness. The Menngag Nyema (Ear of Grain Instructions) says:

"The offering of unsurpassable suchness is solely meditating on bodhicitta."

The later [part of the] Abhidhana says:

"By habituation of resting in a state without self nature the essence of the deity is practiced. This is the great offering, the way to realization of all Buddhas."

Thus meditate for a long time on co-emergent suchness.

2.3.2.2.3.3.6.2. *The two eight-line praises* 

### 2.3.2.2.3.3.6.2.1. Eight-line praise of the Yab

The *praise* is done [with] the root mantra of praise as explained in the commentary and also the eight line mantras as taught in the *Trülpong* (*Abandoning Delusions*).

ड्रश्रालयःक्रीःस-वक्चिट्नाः। चक्चिट्राचा शार्चे:ब्रैं:ब्रैंडैं:ग्रॅंट्राच्याचे:फ्रेला टीया:ब्रेच्.कुष्यःश्रमूचा:श्रक्षंट्रशःश्रीःचाव्यचे:प्रिचा चिच्चित्राचा चार्चे:ब्रें:ब्रेंडें:ग्रॅंट्राचा क्षेत्राचा चार्चे:ब्रेंडें:ग्रॅंटें:च्रेंडें:ब्रेंडें:ग्रॅंटें:च्रेंडें:ब्रेंडें:ग्रंटें:च्रेंडें:ब्रेंडें:व्रेंडें:ब्रेंडें:व्रेंडें:ब्रेंडें:ब्रेंडें:ब्रेंडें:ब्रेंडें:ब्रेंडें:ब्रेंडें:ब्रें:ब्रेंडें:ब्रेंडें:ब्रेंडें:ब्रेंडें:ब्रेंडें:ब्रेंडें:वेंडें:ब्रेंडें:ब्रें:ब्रेंडें:वेंवें:ब्रेंडें:ब्रेंडें:ब्रेंडें:ब्रें:ब्रेंडेंडेंडें:वेंवेंडें:ब्रेंडें:ब्रेंडें:ब्रेंडें:ब्रेंडें:ब्रेंडें:ब्रेंडें:वेंडे

यद्गः क्ष्रिं क्ष्ये क्ष्रिं क्ष्रिं

The first line is: **OM NAMO BHAGAVATE VAIRESHĀYA HUNG HŪNG PHAT**, in Tibetan "**OM**, I prostrate to the Bhagavan, powerful lord of heroes,"

With **OM** and **HUNG HŪNG PHAT** attached to each line:

the second line is  $MAH\bar{A}$  KALPA AGNI SANNI BHAYA "like the fire at the end of a great eon,"

the third line: JATĀ MAKUT OTKATĀYA "with a crown of bound hair," the fourth line: DAMSHTRĀ KARĀ LOKRA BHĪSHANA MUKHĀYA "your bared fangs are ferocious and your features awe-inspiring,"

the fifth: SAHASRA BHUJĀ BHĀSURĀYA "your thousand arms are blazing with rays of light,"

the sixth: PARASHUPĀ SHODYATA SHŪLAKHATVĀNGA DHĀRINE "brandishing battle axe and sling, holding spear and khatvānga," the seventh: VYĀGHRĀ JINĀMBARA DHARĀYA "you wear a tiger skin garment,"

the eighth: MAHĀ DHŪMBRĀNDHAKĀRA VAPUSHĀYA "I bow to the one whose body is of great smoke-colored darkness!"

These are the eight lines for the yab.

#### 2.3.2.2.3.3.6.2.2. *Eight-line praise of the Yum*

**NAMO BHAGAVATI VAJRA VĀRĀHĪVAM** "I prostrate to the Bhagavāti Vajravārāhī,"

NAMO ĀRYA APARĀJITE TRAILOKYAMĀTE MAHĀ VĪDYESHVARĪ, "noble mother of the three worlds, unconquered by others, great goddess of knowledge,"

NAMAH SARVA BHUTA BHAYĀ VAHE MAHĀVAJRE "great vajra lady who completely terrifies and casts down all demons,"

NAMO VAJRA ĀSANE AJITE APARĀJITE VASHYAM KARINETRA BRĀMANI "vajra-throwned lady, invincible and undefeated by others, subduing with rolling eyes,"

NAMOH SHOSHANI ROSHANI KRODHANI KARĀLINI "desiccating even poison, fearsome enraged lady, gaping one,"

डेश.लंबा.में.मर.चक्रेंट्री के.सूर्यट.यर.यर.मंश्री

या सर्भे हे त्याद्याद्वात्र्या व्याप्त्र वा क्ष्या वा सर्भे हे त्या क्ष्या वा सर्भे हे त्या क्ष्या वा सर्भे हे त्या क्ष्या व्या क्ष्या क्ष्या व्या क्ष्या क्ष्य क्ष्या क्ष्य क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्य क्ष्या क्ष्य क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्य क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्य क्ष्या क्ष्य क्ष्या क्ष्य क्य

यक्ष म्या विकास वितास विकास वितास विकास वितास विकास व

ने प्यराखुर्याया इन्ते प्यर्था से नान्या बेन्ता वर्ते नार्थे वान्त्र मुं इन्त्र मृत्रा धेवा छी जाववा नु

NAMA TRĀSANI MĀRANI PRABHEDANI APARĀJAYE "terrifying one, exterminator, one who completely splits apart, lady victorious over adversaries,"

NAMO VIJAYE JAMBHANI STAMBHANI MOHANI "completely victorious heroine, stunning, paralyzing and bewildering,"

NAMO VAJRA VĀRĀHĪ MAHĀYOGINĪ KĀMESHVARĪ KHAGE "I bow to Vajravārāhī, the exalted yoginī, mistress of desire!"

With these eight lines the yum is praised in Indian and Tibetan [texts].

### 2.3.2.2.3.4. The supreme yoga of the completion stage

Fourth, the *supreme yoga of the completion stage* is practiced in the three [ways for those] of higher, middling, and lower faculties according to the extensive system of Ga Lotsawa. How to practice according to the gradual instructions of the 6 yogas of Naropa is described elsewhere.

In brief, within oneself abiding as Heruka, whose body is emptiness-luminosity like a womb filled with breath, are three channels: in the center is the main Uma channel which is blue, on its right side is the Rasana (taste) channel which is red, and on the left the Lalana channel which is white. On top at the tip of the central channel is the Brahma opening and its lower end is four finger-widths below the navel. At their upper end the Rasana and Lalana [side channels] bend down from the cranial membrane reaching the two nostrils, at their lower ends where [they come] from below the navel towards the central channel they [form] the shape of the [bottom of the]  $\overline{\omega}$  syllable, [and in between] the three channels are straight without touching each other and the central channel is a little thicker.

At the crown chakra of great bliss [the central channel] branches out into 32 radial channel petals, at the neck the enjoyment chakra of the five sense pleasures has 16 petals, at the heart the dharma chakra has eight petals, at the navel the emanation chakra has 64 petals – clearly visualize the three channels and four chakras.

If you wonder whether there aren't any more channels in the body, [they are described] elsewhere, since this is just an explanation of the qualities of the channels.

र्श्रेस.पर्येट.जश

ह्यस्य है स्य स्वाप्त स्वाप्त

वेशन्त्रीः सन्त्राश्वराधेतः प्रवितः नवितः वित्तः नवितः नवित्यः नवित्रः नवित्यः । विक्तः नवितः नवितः नवितः । वि विश्वराष्ट्रीः सन्त्राश्वरः स्वितः नवितः नवितः नवितः नवित्यः नवित्यः । विक्तः नवितः । विक्तः नवितः । विक्रः नवि

स्वास्त्रास

The Samvarodaya says:

"There are 72,000 channels which track the body, major and minor channels based on their location, 120 are explained as major, their residing places are counted as 24, and the three channels in their center are pervading and sustaining all."

Thus altogether there are 120 radial branches of the four chakras. Meditate on the three central channels since they are the source of all qualities.

In the center of each of the radial channel hubs, in the chakra at the crown of the head visualize a white upside down HANG, at the throat a white OM, at the heart a blue  $H\bar{U}NG$ , and at the navel a red  $\bar{A}H$ . From the  $\bar{A}H$  the Tummo fire blazes, burning up the syllables at the heart and throat. And by burning the HANG at the crown, [dripping] down from the HANG comes forth a stream of the white element like butter melted by the fire, which restores the syllables at the throat and heart. It dissolves into the  $\bar{A}H$  at the navel and produces the experience of extraordinary great bliss.

It is taught that by meditating for a long time on the whole body inside and out being filled with the stainless light, the five signs such as smoke and so forth appear. Practice in this way.

# गश्रमन। श्रुव श्री सहगारी सूर श्रुर श्रुर श्रुर श्रुर

र्श्चेर्-जन्नामक्त्रम्याः म्यान्त्री विकासदी म्यान्यम् जन्नाम्यान्त्रीयः स्वास्त्रीयः स्वास्त्री म्यान्यम्

# **न्राम् नह्मभामानुःमामग्रामायदेगान्ते ।** कुन्त्यश

न्दः केदः खेरः नः क्ष्रद्याः क्षेत्रः क्ष्र्याः क्षेत्रः क्ष्यः क्ष्रेत्रः क

श्चित्र म्हिन्द्र महिन्द्र महिन्द्

ख्र. श्रृं द्वं द्वं द्वं द्वं त्वं त्वं हे अप्ते क्वं अन्य प्रें व यो अप्तृं व्या क्ष्र् त्वः हे हे ज्या हे अपते [द्वं ] हैं व

नर्यार.पंत्रीर.पंत्री.श्री.श्री.श्री.स्था.पंत्रीर.पंत्री.पंत्री.संश्चा.संत्रीय.पंत्रीय.पंत्रीय.पंत्रीय.पंत्रीय

श्वेत्र प्रदेव स्वतः स्वतः स्वा क्षाराया मार्ग्य विष्या स्वा स्वतः स्वतः स्वा स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्व स्वेतः प्रदेव स्वतः स्

## 2.3.3. Actions at the end of the session

Third, what to do at the end of the session [has the parts]:

completing the *branches of recitation* at the end, *concluding the session*, the *torma yoga*, and *activities in between [sessions]*.

#### 2.3.3.1. The three branches of recitation

#### 2.3.3.1.1. The mala to count the recitations

Regarding the first part of the *mala for counting recitations* the tantra says:

"Take up the human skull bone mala and [continue]."

A mala made from human skull bone is best, but if you don't have it, Bodhi seeds are also taught to be appropriate, with the beads strung up on a cotton thread by a young maiden.

Purify with **OM KHANDAROHE**, cleanse with **SVABHĀVA**, and [recite] "From the state of emptiness..." which is easy to understand [from the text]. Invite the wisdom deities, dissolve them [into you] with **JA HUNG BAM HO**, and perform offerings and so forth.

Recite 108 times: OM SVĀ HA HU HUNG HŪNG PHAT which were the seed syllables at the time of [generating] the armor, or OM PADMA NARTESHVARA HUNG HŪNG PHAT. The mantra meaning is "Auspiciousness to (Lord of Lotus Dance) Padmanarteshvara!"

Say: "Through the complete transformation of Padmanarteshvara appears the mala," and take the mala with the left hand.

To perform the pacifying [activity] hold it above the index finger, for increasing above the middle finger, for controlling above the ring finger, and for wrathful activity above the little finger. Venerate the mala beads as the nature of the deities and when separating [the beads] with the thumb you need to visualize inviting the deities and count the mantras in this way.

# 

वित्राचि नह्न्यापि निष्यापि निष्

ष्पर्वित्वाक्षी निक्का स्वयः में निक्षेत्र निक्

The Vajradakini Tantra says:

"Making a hook with the thumbs [to separate the mala beads], contemplate that all the deities are summoned, settle well in meditative equipoise and recite mantras, and accomplishment will come without a doubt."

### 2.3.3.1.2. Visualizations while reciting

There are three *visualizations for the recitation*, recite the mantra with whichever is suitable and opportune.

If conceptual thoughts predominate, [practice] the *recitation that stabilizes the winds*: at the heart of yourself as Heruka with retinue and so forth, in the center of a sun disk which is upside down [with the light rays going up]\* is a very bright blue HŪNG which is perfectly still, like a needle stuck into a pin cushion. From this arises a mantra garland which turns counter-clockwise in the body. While reciting [the mantra] focus on the visualization of this arrangement. The mantra garland comes out through your left nostril. The outer container of the world is the celestial palace, and all the contained sentient beings have become the assembly of Heruka deities. [The mantra garland] enters their right nostril and dissolves into the HŪNG at their heart. Their two obscurations are completely purified. From the HŪNG the mantra garland [emerges again] and comes out through their left nostril. It enters your right nostril and dissolves into the HŪNG at the heart.

Recite visualizing [the mantra] circling [in this way], or if afflictive emotions dominate [practice] the "palanquin" recitation or the *recitation* that stabilizes the drop: "From the HŪNG syllable at one's heart…" and so on which is easy to understand [in the text].

Or [practice] the commitment recitation or the *recitation of emanation and collection*: at the center of the navel chakra visualize a curled nada [string] on top of a moon disk. From this [arises] a garland which has the nature of the mantra and appears like a garland of flowers and goes out through your right nostril.

\* In Buddhist cosmology when looking up at the sky we see the bottom of the sun disk and above it are the god realms. So in the mandala the bottom of the sun disk which radiates light points up. त्र न्या विकादित्त के त्र क्षा त्र क्षा विकादित के त्र क्षा के त्र क्षा विकादित के त्र क्षा क्षा विकादित के त्र क्षा विकादित

यद्भग्राचि स्वाया केट्यूची क्रु. प्रची विचान विचान हैं है। हे हे उ. हे हैं जा स्वाया हैं प्रची हैं प्रची हैं प्रची के प्रची विचान हैं प्रची के प्रची विचान हैं प्रची विचान हैं प्रची हैं

 $\hat{y}$ [अ].श्रीयदः तर्जू. श.र्ट्र. ई. र-य. यर्ज्यश्च श्वाद्रं । बिश्व प्रध्नः श्वीद्रं श्वाद्रं श्व

(सबर्)रेयटा कूर्यक्षियम् स्वित्सवर्यास्त्रियः सबर्यास्त्रियः स्वितः सब्द्रम्यः स्वितः सब्द्रम्यः स्वितः सबर्यः स्वितः सबरः स्वतः स्

All beings turn into the form of mandala deities, their two obscurations are purified, they are released from the unfortunate [lower] realms and established in the state of liberation. Visualize that again the mantra garland enters through your left nostril and dissolves into the nada at the navel.

#### 2.3.3.1.3. The mantras to be recited

Regarding the *mantras to be recited*, the essence [mantra] is: **OM SHRĪ VAJRA** "Glorious Vajra," and even though it is taught that to translate **HE HE RU RU KAM** as "Glorious Blood Drinker" is not exact, there is no other clear translation and here the meaning seems to be just this. [Next is] **HUNG HŪNG PHAT** [and] **DĀKINĪ** "Lady Sky-goer," **JALA SAMVARAM** "bound net," **SVĀHĀ** "be firm!" This is the 22 syllable essence [mantra] of the Bhagavan.

OM HRĪ HA HA HUNG HŪNG PHAT is the near essence [mantra], the seven syllables have no translation, but are taught as the mantra of the life force.

The essence mantra of the yum is **OM VAJRA VAIROCANĪYE HUNG HŪNG PHAT**, in Tibetan [**VAJRA VAIROCANA**] is "Vajra Distinct Manifestation."

The near essence [mantra] is Om Sarva Buddha Dākinīye Vajra Warnanīye Hung Hūng Phat.

[And for the four dakinis] recite: "In the center of a sun disc in the four dakinis' hearts are the syllables MAM, TAM, PAM, and LAM, surrounded by their respective mantras. Light streaming forth from the rotating mantras benefits beings. The light returns and dissolves into the mantra garlands and seed syllables, circling [in this way]. All the Buddhas recite the mantras praising the dakinis."

If you [wish to] perform the recitation of the four activities at this point, you can recite after the main recitation practice has been accomplished or in between sessions. It is best if you do the pacifying visualization while reciting at the end of the early morning session, the increasing visualization at the end of the late morning session, the controlling visualization at the end of the afternoon session, and the wrathful visualization at the end of the evening session.

याञ्चनश्चर्यः विश्वर्षः व

र्वेनासराक्षेर्द्रा सबराक्षुं निहेश्यद्रा यतःश्वराचराचन्त्र

म्राम्यादी युःनःसम्

ब्रिट्यो क्ट्रेल्य क्ष्यकात् हे. मूं. क्यां क्य

न् सूर्यात्रेष्ठ्रायते सूर्यात्रेष्ठ्रायत् स्त्रात्रेष्ठ्रायत् स्त्रात् सूर्यात् सूर्यात् स्त्रात् सूर्यात् स्यात् सूर्यात् सूर्यात् सूर्यात् सूर्यात् सूर्यात् सूर्यात् सूर्

The following visualization of the recitation for the retinue is not clear in the root text: at the heart of each of the retinue on a sun seat is a HŪNG which [represents] Samadhisattva (Form/Being of Meditative Absorption). Recite the mantras which are visualized turning around [the HŪNG]. They are OM DĀKINĪYE HUNG HŪNG PHAT and similarly for each of their name mantras\* LĀME, KHANDAROHE, and RŪPINĪYE, who are called in Tibetan Khandroma, Dzema [or Lama], Dumkyema, and Sukchenma. The root tantra says:

"Recite with **OM** at the beginning and **HŪNG** twice and **PHAT** attached at the end."

About the count Lawapa says:

"100,000 for the main [deity] and 10,000 [each] for the retinue."

Since it is taught that in this age of strife the recitation needs to be multiplied four times, the count for recitation of the essence mantra [should be] 400,000, and since this also applies to the retinue, [their mantras also] need to be multiplied.

Only count the mantras which have been recited without distraction in the main session, however in between sessions when the mind is distracted the recitations are not counted. Also recite [additional mantras] in order to make up for wrong repetitions and omissions. Avoid the faults of reciting with a voice too loud or too low, too fast or too slow, or making [the mantra] shorter.

In general one should do four sessions of recitation in this way. The *Abhidhana* says:

"At four times practice, meditate and recite one pointedly!

As is taught keep four sessions and conclude each session by reciting as much as possible.

<sup>\*</sup> their names are DĀKINĪ, LĀMĀ, KHANDAROHĀ, and RŪPINĪ, which together with YE which means "to" becomes DĀKINĪYE, LĀME, KHANDAROHE, and RŪPINĪYE

# **गहेशम इत्योग्रम्न वी** देश तुः मदे गहिर स्था

# **गशुस्राय गर्हेरासदीत्रवायक्टेरित्री** क्रिसादबुदायका

योर्ट्र-स्यान्त्य-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्य

चक्रीट्राची गुवर्श्वेद्राक्ष्यकार्थः यो व्यक्तिस्या व्यक्तिस्य व्यक्तिस्य व्यक्तिस्य व्यक्तिस्य व्यक्तिस्य व्य विश्वेषाः स्वतः प्रतः विश्वेष्ठः स्वत्या स्वतः स्व विश्वेष्ठः स्वतः स्वत

### 2.3.3.2. Dissolving the session

Second, regarding dissolving the session Ghantapa's root text says:

"When becoming tired of reciting the light of the seed syllable which is the agent of wisdom illuminates the mandala ground and palace walls and gradually [they are] transformed into light which gathers into the HŪNG. Through its complete transformation I [arise] with one face and two hands, standing with extended right leg, splendid youth with majestic bearing, with all the marks, and the six charnel ground ornaments, holding vajra and bell."

In this way as taught, the light from the HŪNG at the heart dissolves the support of the celestial palace into light, and like the vapor from breathing on a mirror dissolves towards the center, the retinue and so forth gather into the nada which also becomes non-observable. Rest in this state for a while. Visualize again arising as the form of Heruka with one face and two hands.

### 2.3.3.3. The yoga of torma

Third, the *yoga of torma*. The *Samvarodaya* says:

"Without a liquor torma offering accomplishments will not come swiftly. Therefore it is said that the Buddhas of the past praised the torma offering."

Since it is taught here and also in *All Conducts* and so forth, the torma offering is important. Even though there are [torma offerings] at various times at the beginning and end of the session and before the recitation and so forth, here they are also offered between the sessions of self-generation.

यात्र के है। यात्र के है।

ने निवेत नु न्तु र खूर निवेश क्वार्य त्याय स्ट हैं हे प्रज्ञ क्वें र निवेश क्याय स्ट हैं र न्तु क्वें र निवेश क्याय स्ट हैं र न्तु क्वें र निवेश क्वें र नि

यम् भूत्रास्य क्ष्या न्य क्ष्या व्याप्त क्ष्य क्ष्या व्याप्त क्ष्य क

पदियाः पर्स् सार्वा क्षेत्रः प्रविकासम् स्ट्रास्त्रः स्ट

 $[ \vec{A} \cdot \vec{a}$ 

As during the preparatory common blessings of both the torma for the worldly [deities] and for the transcendent [deities] sprinkle water from the vase and the inner offering to bless the five meats and five nectars.

It is important to know the meaning of the four mudra gestures of the flaming mudra such as pressing down with the left leg on the right [with partially crossed legs and touching the big toes together].

Knotting the index fingers together [in the flaming mudra symbolizes] the embrace of method and wisdom in the path of desire,\* blocks the winds in the left and right side [of the body] in the path of liberation,\* and prevents one [from falling into] the extremes of eternalism and nihilism when abiding as the deity [in the completion stage].

In the same way the touching middle fingers [symbolize] joining the vajra and lotus in the path of desire, drawing the winds into the central channel in the path of liberation, and leading the ones who are abiding as the deity [in the completion stage] onto the Middle Path.

[Forming the shape of the tip of] a stable vajra with the [joined] thumbs [symbolizes] making a door to the Avadhuti central channel in the first [path], connecting to the central channel at the navel in the second [path], and apprehending discriminating wisdom in the third.

Placing [this mudra] at the forehead [symbolizes] opening the "channel of the sky" in the path of desire, meditating on the central channel at the crown of the head in the path of liberation, and focusing on the Dharmadhatu when abiding as the deity [in the completion stage].

The circling and turning [of the mudra symbolizes] agitating the HŪNG PHAT in the first [path], churning back and forth with the churner\*\* in the second, and practicing listening, contemplation, and meditation, all three [in the] third.

<sup>\*</sup> in most cases the path of desire is for lay practitioners and the path of liberation for the ordained, and both are associated with the generation stage according to HH Chetsang Rinpoche

<sup>\*\*</sup> this might be an allusion to the thrusting of the penis in the vagina

म्यास्य स्थान्त्र । प्राप्त (प्राप्त ) मृद्धि । प्राप्त । स्थान । स्थ

क्षेट.री.यक्षे.य.च्री टट.स्.यक्षित्र.प्राप्त्र्य.यक्षेत्र.या.यक्षेत्रया वाश्वत्र.या.यत्राक्षेत्र.या.

सदः र्ट्रेब.सी श्रुंच.स्यूच.स्यतः श्रू.सीचा.स.ची। यहः सूच्याचा.स्यूच.स्यू.स्यूच्याचा.स्यूच.स्यू.स्यूच.स्यूच.स् इयात्राच्येत्रः सुत्राच्याचा। वाश्वित्रः सत्राच्याचा.स्यूच.सूच्याया.स्यूच्याया.स्यूच्याया.स्यूच्याया.स्यूच्याय इयात्राच्येत्रः सुत्राच्यंत्रः स्यतः सूच्याया.स.ची। स्यूच्याया.स.स.स्यूच्याया.स.स.स्यूच्याया.स्यूच्याया.स्यूच

लयम् नत्रे द्वा क्ष्या क्ष प्रत्य क्ष्या क्ष्य प्रत्य क्ष्या क्ष्य

यभ्यास्तर्या स्थान्यस्यात्री स्थान्यस्यात्रस्य स्थान्यस्यात्रस्य स्थान्यस्यात्रस्य स्थान्यस्य स्थानस्य स्यानस्य स्थानस्य स्यानस्य स्थानस्य स्यानस्य स्थानस्य स्थानस् Pressing down the feet [symbolizes] blocking the winds of defecation in the first and second [paths], and blocking the two extremes [of eternalism and nihilism] in the third.

Looking upwards [symbolizes] first and second to focus on the four channel wheels, and third to focus on the five paths [of accumulation, joining, seeing, cultivation, and no more learning].

Sounding the **PHEM** upwards [symbolizes] first and second to ignite the Tummo fire, and third to benefit others through the twelve aspects of excellent speech [i.e. discourse, song, poetry, etc.].

Summoning the heroes and heroines of the ten directions [symbolizes] first and second to summon bodhicitta from the 32 [branches] of the central channel's crown chakra, and third Avagosha explained in his commentary to *All Conducts* that its purpose is to invite the perfected wisdom deities into one's own mind stream.

This meaning of the blazing mudra should be known and contemplated here and also earlier, whenever one summons all the heroes and yoginis of the ten directions together with the empowerment deities and also the ten guardians of the directions and so forth.

Following the 32<sup>nd</sup> chapter of the *Samvarodaya* the mantra is explained as: INDRA "Mighty Lord Indra," YAMĀ, "Lord of the Dead," VARUNĀ "Water Goddess," KUBERĀ "Yaksha Spirit," MAHĀBHŪTA "Great Demon," AGNI "God of Fire," RAKSHASA, "Cannibalistic Demon," VĀYUTEWAHA "Wind God," CHANDRA "Moon," SŪRYA "Sun," BRAHMA "Pure One," ASUR "Demigod," and mentioning ARYADEVA here is obviously a mistake since he is also not mentioned anywhere in the original Indian and Tibetan texts, VEMACHITRI "King of Demigods," PRITHIVĪDEVATA "Earth Goddess," followed by SAPARIWĀRA ĀRKASHAYA JA "along with your retinue, be drawn [here] quickly!"

श्रात्मार्श्व श्रात्मार्श्व वेश्वर्याश्वर्यात्रेश्वर्याश्वर्यात्रेश्वर्यात्यात्यात्यात्यात्र्यात्यात्यात्यात्यात्यात्र्यात्यात्यात्यात्र्यात्यात्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्

क्र्यान्नभग्नत् । क्ष्राक्ष्यं क्ष्री ह्राह्माश्रिमान्नी क्ष्यान्नभग्नत् । क्ष्राह्मान्नभग्नत् । क्ष्राह्मान्न स्वतः प्रतः चार्यां (क्षेत्राह्मान्ना)। क्षान्तु चार्यान्न क्ष्यान्नभग्नत् । क्ष्यान्नभग्निमभग्नत् । क्ष्यान्नभग्नत् । क्ष्यान्नभग्नत् । क्ष्यान्नभग्नत् । क्ष्यान्नभग्नत् । क्ष्यान्नभग्नन् । क्ष्यान्नभग्नत् । क्ष्यान्नभग्नन् । क्ष्यान्नभग्नभग्नन् । क्ष्यान्नभग्नन् । क्ष्यान्वभग्नन् । क्ष्यान्वभग्नन् । क्ष्यान्वभग्नन् । क्ष्यान्वभग्नन्वभग्नन् । क्ष्यान्वभग्नन्वभग्नन्वभग्नन्वभग्नन्वभग्नन्वभग्नन्वभग्नभग्नन्वभग्नन्वभग्नन्वभग्नन्वभग्नन्वभग्नन्वभग्नन्वभग्नन्वभग्नन्वभग्नन्वभग्नन्वभग्नन्वभग्नन्वभग्नन्वभग्नन्वभग्नन्वभग्नन्वभग्नन्वभग

ત્રાહ્યન્ય ત્રાહ્યના સ્ત્રાહ્યના સ્ત્રાહ્યા સ્ત્રાહ્ય સ્ત્રાહ્યા સ્ત્રાહ્ય સ્ત્રાહ્યા સ્ત્રાહ્ય સ્ત્રાહ્યા સ્ત્રાહ્ય સ્ત્રાહ્યા સ્ત્રાહ્ય સ

Designating in this way summon the guests, and in order for them to become inseparable with the guardians of the directions in the eight charnel grounds, say: JA HŪNG BAM HO and they dissolve [into them]. SANTRIPTA "be completely satisfied," SARVA DEVATA "all hosts of deities," SĀDHAKASYA "of the practitioners," SHĀNTIM KURU "perform pacifying activities," PUSHTIM KURU "perform increasing activities," SARVA KARYANTU "perform all activities," SIDDHIR BHAVANTU "may it be accomplished," YATHĀ SUKHAM SUKHE "as the bliss of bliss." Invite in this way and offer the general offering substances with two waters [i.e. ARGHAM and PADYAM without the additional ĀÑCAMĀNAM and PROKSHANAM] with the Pekor (turning lotus) mudra.

Recite in Sanskrit or Tibetan "Net of dakinis, sacred bliss," and the two mantra sections SAMAYA STVAM, SAMAYA HO three times.

The vowels on the left palm transform into the moon and the consonants in the right palm transform into the sun, and in their center is a vajra marked with a HŪNG. Contemplating this, raise the torma on the palms [and recite:] OM AHNYONYA "Others, [whoever]" ANUGATĀ "follows after," SARVA DHARMAH "all phenomena," PARAMVARA "absolutely supreme," ANUPRAVISHTA "completely engaged in," SARVA DHARMAH "all phenomena," ADYANTA "beyond all extremes (and completely pure)," ANUPRAVISHTAH "which one is completely engaged in," SARVA DHARMAH "all phenomena," OM ĀH HŪNG "nature of the three vajras [of body, speech, and mind]."

Raise the torma on the vajra palms and recite as in the eighth chapter of the *Samvarodaya*: "The goddess is genuine..." and so on. As before during the nectar [offering], from the HŪNG on the tongue of the guests arises a single-pronged vajra with a hollow tube. Visualize that they consume [the nectar]. The mantra in the *Samvarodaya* is: **OM VAJRA** ĀRALIHOH "Reveling vajra, enjoy!" JA HŪNG BAM HOH VAJRA DĀKINĪ SAMAYASTVAM DRISHYA HO "Vajra dakinis, abide and keep [your] pledge!" Recite as many times as you wish and offer the torma to the transcendent principal deity and retinue.

क्ट.च.क्ट.चर्.(५श्चर.च.)चेश्चरत्रे। ल.ड्रे.से.यं.तं ते ते क्ट.च.क्ट.चर्.तं ते ते क्ष्यां क्ट.चर्या क्रियां क्षयां क्ष्यां क्षयं क्ष्यां क्

 Offer the two waters of the general offering with music and praise as taught in the *Samvarodaya*. Offer the two praises with: "Glorious Heruka, great hero…" and so on and "Samsara and Nirvana equally…" and so on.

[Then] turning to the charnel ground's guardians of the directions counter-clockwise to the cardinal directions and clockwise to the intercardinal directions as understood [before], recite the mantras from the 14th chapter of the *Abhidhana* and the 32nd chapter of the *Samvarodaya*: **OM KHA KHĀ HI KHĀ HI** and so on twice and offer the torma. The mantra meaning has been explained previously.

Recite the petition to the assembly of deities and so on, holding the vajra in the right and ringing the bell towards the eight directions, and recite the 100 syllable Heruka mantra three times as taught to make up for omissions and unnecessary repetitions and to complete what was incomplete. The 25<sup>th</sup> chapter of the *Abhidhana* says:

"In the beginning, middle, and end to mend broken commitments and in order to stabilize the heroes, yoginis, and all the retinues recite the secret hundred syllable mantra."

Recite **OM YOGA SHUDDHAH** and so on as in the *Samvarodaya* together with the pekor and the embracing mudras. Contemplate that the wisdom deity guests are inseparable from oneself. Then snap with thumb and ring finger [facing] outward.

Recite "OM, you sentient beings..." and so on to the worldly guests and the mantra OM VAJRA MU which means "vajra liberation."

If you didn't perform the dissolution stage earlier do it here, or if it was already performed bind the six armor [deities] here.

नन्नाकृत्त्वर्ध्वर्वत्वर्थाशुःन्वर्थाः श्रीत्वर्थाः स्त्रीत्वर्थाः स्तर्वर्थाः स्त्रीत्वर्थाः स्त्रीत्वर्यत्वर्थाः स्त्रीत्वर्थाः स्त्रीत्वर्थाः स्त्रीत्वर्थाः स्त्रीत्वर्थाः स्त्रीत्वर्यत्वर्यस्तिः स्त्रीत्वर्यत्वर्थाः स्त्रीत्वर्यत्वर्यस्तिः स्त्रीत्वर्यस्तिः स्त्रीत्वर्यस्तिः स्त्रीत्वर्यस्तिः स्त्रीत्वर्यस्तिः स्तिः स्त्रीत्वर्यस्तिः स्त्रीत्वर्यस्तिः स्त्रीत्वर्यस्तिः स्त्रत्वर्यस्तिः स्त्रीत्वर्यस्तिः स्त्रीत्वर्यस्तिः स्त्रीत्वर्यस्तिः स्त्रत्वर्यस्तिः स्त्रत्वर्यस्तिः स्त्रत्वर्यस्तिः स्त्रत्वर्यस्तिः स्त्रत्वर्यस्तिः स्त्रत्वर्यस्तिः स्त्रत्वर्यस्तिः स्त्रत्वर

# नवि न श्रवः सः श्रेषे नरः श्रेष्ट्रेरः प्रमाने

 $\frac{2}{3}. \times \mathbb{C}. \frac{1}{3} \times$ 

मुक्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः कष्ट्रः क्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः क

अन्-प्रते-नुभाक्त्यायर्श्चेत्रास्यते सुकानसुषानका अन्-प्रत्नस्यायाथ्ना।

[With:] "I appear as the Bhagavan, at the heart is a white **OM HA**..." and so on meditate on the six armor [syllables]. Since the yab is single, the yum's armor syllables are not needed. Protect with the mantras of the four faced [protection fence: **OM SUMBHA NISUMBHA**... and **OM GRIHANA**..., etc.], recite auspicious mantras, and dedicate the virtue and so forth.

#### 2.3.3.4. The conduct in between sessions

Fourth, the conduct before, after, and in between sessions:

Bless food with the three seed syllables and **HA HO HRI**. The *Samvarodaya* says:

"At all times perform blessing with the **OM ĀH HŪNG** mantra, and with the mantra **HA HO HRI** purify and realize."

[When eating, do] as thus taught and [reciting]: OM SAMĀYA SHUDDHA SARVA DHARMA "All phenomena are pure in their sameness," SAMAYA SHUDDHOH - HANG "in the state of equality I am pure," with the pride of all phenomena being pure in the state of equality, imagine that from a HŪNG on your own tongue appears a white single-pronged vajra, and offer to the assemblies of deities of the body chakras with: OM AMRITA UDAKA HUNG HŪNG THA THA TRĀM AM KHAM HŪNG. Take [the food] with your left hand and enjoy.

[When washing,] visualize that the deities are washed as during the cleansing empowerment.

When going to sleep, [visualize that] the container [of the environment] and contained [beings] gather into clear light, and lie down.

When waking up, imagine that you are awakened by arousing songs of the yoginis, and get up. त्त्र्र्य। योषयं.लटः। श्रृट्रं त्यात्रात्रव्यात्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्र

नश्रम्भः न्यान्तः विद्यान्तः विद्यान्तः विद्यान्तः विद्यान्तः विद्यान्तः विद्यान्तः विद्यान्तः विद्यान्तः विद्य

बेशन्ता अर्देवन्तर्हेन्यश नार्षेवन्तरे हुँन्यक्षशन्तरहे॥ नायश्यन्तिन्त्रविद्यन्तराधेवर्दे॥

वेशन्ता नम्र्यम्थान्याम्याम्यास्याम् न्यास्यान् न

ब्रैव.श्रुच.क्य.चे.र्चूश.हे। क्रूंश.पर्वैर.जश

तर्माहेन'यहेग'हेन'यम्भान्ध्री नर्खां काते भ्रीत सेना हा। वर्षां काते पहेन'हेन'यम्भान्ध्रा

ब्रैस्प्रुत्यायाः भ्रीत्रः श्रेषाः में स्कृतः स्वी। ब्रैस्प्राच्याः स्वीतः श्रेषाः में स्कृतः स्वी।

सक्ट्र-सःमिष्ठेशःशुःन्वन्द्रभे श्चीःस्वाद्रः व्यवास्याः सक्ट्र-सःस्वाद्यायः सक्ट्र-सःस्वाद्यायः सक्ट्र-सःस्वाद भक्ट्र-सःमिष्ठेशःशुःन्वन्द्रभे अक्ट्र-सःस्वरः स्वाद्यायः स्वाद्यायः सक्ट्र-सःस्वरः स्वाद्यायः सक्ट्र-सःस्वरः स Furthermore perform all activities from the left [i.e. circumambulate counter-clockwise, use your left hand, etc.] without being distracted. It says in the *Vajradakini Tantra*:

"Since teachings, movement, and all beings originate from the left, eat with the left and offer with the left."

Also the Abhidhana says:

"Left practice is wisdom and accordingly right practice is method."

Although other gestures and so forth were also taught, I did not elaborate on them, since there are only few practitioners [of them].

After accomplishing the [complete] count, times, and signs of recitation, you should also do 1/10<sup>th</sup> of the number of recitations for the fire puja.

The Samvarodaya says:

"After 100,000 recitations, do 1/10<sup>th</sup> as many [recitations] for the fire offering. Worldly and transcendent accomplishments will be quickly accomplished, otherwise they won't."

This is taught, [but] how to do the fire offering is described elsewhere.

Furthermore the Ganachakra and so forth are taught to make up for incomplete [practice], and Lawapa also taught the outer [torma offering] and the hand offering with the explanation of both the [right] hand which does the offering and the [left] hand with the offerings on it. The outer offering and the offering using the hands come before [the Ganachakra].

व्यमान्यः अक्टर्न्यः दृत्यः क्रिन्यः वित्यः वित्यः

वश्यीः हैं है खे अश्यर्श्वाश्चर्दा।
श्वेद्गाते द्र्यात व्याप्त व्याप्

To explain the *hand offering and Ganachakra* briefly: when Lawapa and so forth performed the Ganachakra, they explained that the hand offering ritual should be performed before that. Perform it on the tenth day and other occasions, and be continuously mindful at the time of eating and so forth. Ghantapa says:

"Perform the fire offering at the mandala of the heart [chakra] [visualizing] food as Vajrasattva and so forth."

And *All Conducts* says about the reason for this:

"Through the yogi's hand offering all desires will be fulfilled.

Even without thinking [about it] food, drink, garments, and so forth will be obtained. By always making offerings what is envisioned will be accomplished."

[In the place of the recipients of your offering] you can either [practice] the yoga of the mandala deities or you can visualize [other] deities [which you practice] between sessions. Then take up the inner offering with the ring finger of the right hand, sprinkle water offering on the left hand, and arrange five heaps of flowers on the [left] palm.

On the palm of the left hand visualize a red lotus with five petals, and at the center of its navel **OM BAM**, and going counter-clockwise from the front of your hand visualize **HANG YOM** and so on. Bending up the fingers a little bit on the thumb is a moon seat, and on the other four [fingers] and on the finger nails of the bent up [fingers] are sun seats. On the thumb visualize the syllables **OM HA** and on the four fingers [going clockwise] **NA MA HI**, **SVĀ HĀ HU**, **BOH SHAT HE**, and **HUNG HŪNG HOH**, and on the fingernails **PHAT PHAT**. Many texts also say that it is acceptable to merely contemplate that each is the essence of its deity.

यवस्य स्वर्धाः स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्व

लयानदि क्विनर्ज्ञ द्वा जिन्ने क्विन्त्रे क्विन्त्

चेश्वा यरःश्रृंटःट्टःश्रेयशःश्र्याश्व्यशःशायदुः।यशशःहेःही क्षेटःग्रेट्रःशःश्र्याशःश्रंश्वःहरःश्व्यःयरः ययःस्रृंटःट्टःश्रेयशःश्र्याशःवश्वा वियोःछः।यशश्चो हूट्शः।यशशी योत्यःयरःग्रेट्रःयःश्वेरः।यशशी ययाःसदुःश्वेःश्व्याशःशायशशी वियोःछः।यशशी हूट्शः।यशशी योत्यःयरःग्रेट्रःयःश्वेरः।यशशी

यक्षे.स.५५३.श्रू.भूवीश्वत्रात्राक्ष्ट्री मट्ट क्षेट्र स्त्री ब्रिश्य स्त्रीयाश्वर्या वर्षे.या क्षू.यह. मिश्य स्त्री स्त्री स्त्री स्वायात्राक्षे र.ह्ये ट्री स्त्री स्त्री व्या श्रू व्या स्त्री स्त्

If wishing to do an extensive practice: on the palms are the six goddesses such as Vajravarahi and so forth in union with [their] yab consort, and on the finger nails are the six deities such as Vajrasattva and so forth in union with [their] yum consort. The visualization is enhanced by the three rituals [of generating the body of the deity, reciting for the speech, and concentration for the mind].

Or, on the palm visualize instantaneously the six heroines and on the finger nails the six heroes. Also meditating on a single male [without consort] is accepted, as Vajra Tathagatha explained.

Or taught very much abbreviated, on the fingers and finger nails are the six syllables HA, HI, HU, HE, HO, and HANG [respectively], and on the palm are BAM, YOM, MOM, HRĪNG, HŪNG, and PHAT. It is also taught that you can visualize the heroes and heroines, whichever you prefer, or they can be on the back of the hand, as the *Abhidhana* says:

"May the heroes go into the back [of the hand]."

Clearly visualize the mandala of the five deities of Chakrasamvara [on the back of your hand], like a reflection in a mirror.

The flesh of the hand is the earth element, its blood the water element, its heat the fire element, its movement the air element, and the empty spaces and insides between the [fingers] are the space element. Imagine these five [elements] as the five goddesses such as Pātanī and so forth.

For elaborate [practice] it is taught to add the sense offerings to the mantra of each one. For the short [offering you recite] **OM SARVA VĪRA YOGINĪ SAPARIWĀRA VAJRA PUSHPE PRATĪCCA SVĀHĀ** and so on, or even shorter, perform the five offerings with **OM VAJRA PUSHPE PRATĪCCA** and so on. Then praise with the two sets of eight lines [for Heruka and Vajravarahi].

**OM** ĀH HŪNG. Take the [bowl of the] liquid substances with the right hand and anoint all around the front and back [of your head by sprinkling a few drops] with the left. Anoint similarly with liquor [by also sprinkling a few drops].

स्याःक्ट्राम्यःक्रें न्यः क्रें न्यः क्रें

स्वाक्षं त्वे सन्तर्भा स्वाक्ष्ण स्वाक्ष्ण स्वाक्ष्ण स्वाक्षण स्वाक्षण स्वाक्षण स्वाक्षण स्वाक्षण स्वाक्षण स्व स्वाक्षण स्व स्वाक्षण स्व

# **गहैशम केंग्राग्रीयिंदार्वे ।** र्क्षेत्रप्रें देहे हे या तु प्रश्

चर्चन्द्रस्य स्थाः भी सः क्षेत्रास्य सः हो।।
क्षेत्र स्याद्र सं स्याद्य स्थाः स्थाः

 Imagine that the left hand is blessed by all heroes and yoginis, and offer meat and Tsampa dough mixed together [to the deities on the hand] one by one. Offer [to the respective deity] going counter-clockwise on the palm: OM BAM, [then] HANG YOM, and clock-wise on the fingers OM HA, NA MA HI, and so on. It is taught to offer three times, and to amend for unnecessary additions and omissions recite the hundred syllable mantra, supplicate in accordance with the occasion [for your practice of the offering], and if doing the Ganachakra offering, mix a bit of the [Tsampa and meat] offering substances [with the substances of the Ganachakra offering].

Then gather the anointed substances which [are still] in your hand and place them [back] into the container, which is used for [this] purpose of accomplishment [throughout the retreat]. The reason taught for this is to increase wealth. Visualize that all the assembled deities of the hand dissolve into oneself. Turn [the hands in] the Pekor mudra, then place the joined palms at the three places [in front of the crown, throat, and heart chakra], and recite HŪNG ĀH OM.

### 2.3.3.4.2. Ganachakra offering

Second, Master Vajra Ghantapa says about the Ganachakra:

"It is the accumulation of merit and wisdom, and in the Ganachakra feast offering supreme accomplishment will be obtained.

Therefore its ritual is supreme on the eighth, tenth, fourteenth, and fifteenth day."

Arrange the feast and Upaya substances [symbolizing] method [which are the five meats and other foods] to the right [from the deity's perspective], the Madanā substances [symbolizing] wisdom [which are the five nectars and other drinks] and so forth on the left, and the "Khur" Tsampa torma and so forth in the center on top of a tiger skin and so on. Sprinkle them with [a few drops of vase] water and the inner offering, and bless as during the blessing of the five meats and the five nectars.

योट चया त्री अ. जाया न श्री टे. हूं यो अ. केश अ. श्री. खेट चिर त्र व्यक्त व्यक्त त्र व्यक्त त्र व्यक्त त्र व्यक्त त्र व्यक्त त्र व्यक्त त्र व्यक्त व्यक्त व्यक्त व्यक्त त्र व्यक्त व्य

स्वायः भ्रीः क्वायः स्वायः भ्रीः क्वायः भ्रीः क्वायः स्वायः स्वयः स्वायः स्वयः स्वायः स्वयः स्वायः स्वायः स्वयः स्वायः स्वयः स

स्यादर्ने न्यानु स्वास्य विष्या स्वास्य स्वास

द्वेर्-त्रः अर-श्रीश्वार-त्रदे र्श्वेत्। अर-विश्वार्थ-त्र्वित्रः श्रीत्वित्रः श्रीत्वित्रः श्रीत्रः श्रीत्वित्रः श्रीत्वित्रः श्रीत्वित्रः श्रीत्रः श्रीत्वित्रः श्रीत्रः श्र

दे.चबुष्युं.कुं.यं.याद्यी अक्ष्यं.कुंशकंत्रं व<del>हेवाय</del>ं.[यहंगं.]सर.पश्चरी Invite the guests of the feast: the lineage lamas, the yidam Chakrasamvara and dakini Vajravarahi, the dharma protectors Mahākala and Mahākali (Shrīdevi), and so forth. The dharma brothers and sisters all gather on their seats.

[Then] bless the feast substances and so forth as explained, enjoy the offerings, and sing vajra songs. Make an aspiration for perfect happiness and so forth, and offer the remainder and so on according to the sadhana text.

Regarding the benefits for the person who has received the four empowerments of this great mandala of the Bhagavan Chakrasamvara and practices the path of the generation and completion stages, the root tantra says:

"By completely purifying his conduct from all misdeeds, a supreme being obtains the level of Tathagatha and in birth after birth is born in the Tathagatha family and becomes a religious king.

Just as all manifestations of previously accumulated misdeeds are inferior, that person who continuously meditates and aspires for the Bhumis will have power over all.

As when a vessel filled with butter is placed amongst the fire the fresh butter will melt on top, defilements of the vessel will be vanished.

Likewise through Heruka's name misdeeds will be destroyed.

 如何
 如何
 如何
 如何
 如何
 可以
 <t

स्वायः श्रुट्-वाद्याः श्रुप्यः स्वायः श्रुट्-वाद्यः श्रुप्यः स्वायः श्रुट्-वाद्यः श्रुप्यः स्वायः स्वयः स्वायः स्वायः स्वयः स्वय

यीय.मु.श्रुंट्रांचया.कै.ये.लुय.त्रम्यक्षम्य.श्री.लुय.त्रम्यम्यूयम्यम्य्र्या।। इम्प्रत्यामःभ्रित्यात्मःयाश्रीटमःयम। लु.ट्मायट्ट्रांकुट्राकुट्राकुट्राकुट्राम्यम्यम्य

म्यान्त्रक्ष्यः व्यक्तः क्षेत्रः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्तः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्तः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्तः स्

Merely concentrating the mind or by reading, writing, and reciting enjoyments of the higher realms will be obtained, or one will become a universal monarch.

At the time of Phowa transference [during your death] all yogis, the glorious Blood Drinker Heruka, and so forth, holding various flowers in their hands, and with a multitude of victory banners and standards, with sounds of a symphony of music, and many offerings of songs [show] what is known as 'death' is conceptual thought and lead [you] to the celestial realms."

(As it is explained at length, it is excellent to practice this particular yidam since he is like the crown of all tantra baskets and the heart blood of all mother tantras.) The venerable Mahasiddha Ghantapa said:

"For those who keep samaya commitments, show devotion to the lama, and exert themselves in meditation and practice, all spiritual attainments will arise.

They will be well endowed with long life and enjoyments, and glory, power, and splendid works will be accomplished. They will become learned in all teachings, great expounders who quell dispute, and quickly attain even [the state of] great Vajradhara himself."

द्ये स्ट्रेट हिना से त्या के राम्य के सम्बद्ध के त्या कर्त होता है त्या कर्त हो हिन स्ट्रिट हो स्ट्रेट हो स्ट्र

क्ष. में. ही। क्षेत. यपु . योशीट. प्या क्षेत. प्रा वाषा (य क्रेयोश. सपु . ) कु प्रा इलप्दर्शेरसम्बद्धिर दिरासे स्वर्धा ५'न'र्केस'मदे'णे५'नदेव, ५न८'में कुया सर्केना मुद्र पर्दे द द्वादे कर केद पदी द पद्मे वा। न्वेद : मुं में प्राप्त : मुं दे दे दे सु : सर्वेद : सम्बद्धा हे निवेद हैं न्या निवेद दसन्य स्थाय सुवा ने न निवेद सकें ना इलानुःमाने भाने सूरायामाने हे देवा हे अ.पचर.चमेप.चमेर.चूर.चूर.अपु.ली.रआअकूची विंद्राक्ष्यं स्वाप्त्राद्वा विश्वासक्ष्या स्वाप्त्रा श्चैतःवनशःक्षितःन्नरःसङ्कतेःखूनाशःनश्चेनाशःवा। क्षेत्रार्देव समय द्वा क्षे खूराय यही द हो द सदी। यना से द ना से र मुं हो से ना पदी द र हो हो। श्रेत्रायाययः के याश्रेतायानञ्जायः नदे : सबर : श्रेत्रायया। येग्रायन्त्रप्रते यह प्रक्र क्र हो र य र में द्या नन्गाने 'न्यव्य'धून' ह्य' सदे 'नगव' देन' की शा *क़ॖॖ*॔ॸ॔ढ़ॱॸढ़ॗॱॸढ़ॆॱऄऺॴॱढ़ॆॱॹ॒ॸॱॿॸॖॱक़ॖ॓ॸॗॗऻ दॅव ग्रम् द्वाया नविव सार्हे ग्रम संग्रहें ग्रम्म कुर्देव न्यायर न नहें र से नाय है या सदे का। क्रं-रनश्रः भ्रेना-र्राः भ्रुत्रः हेनाः अर्थे यः नश्नेनाशः श्री। स्य प्राप्त प्रमु स्याप्य प्रया वर्षे न्या स्थापिय ।

As it is explained at length, it is excellent to practice this particular yidam since he is like the crown of all tantra baskets and the heart blood of all mother tantras.

# 3. Author's colophon

OM SVĀSTI. Victory banner on top of the dome of the Victorious Buddha's excellent teachings: from among the heap of jewels of mother tantra yogas, may the power of the wishfulfilling jewel of Chakrasamvara (who binds the net) be victorious! The great rain of supreme and common [attainments] which fulfill every want is gathered here, at the end of the ocean of tantric meanings, extremely difficult to understand. The supreme guide of holy India, who realizes this as it is, is called Ghantapa, well known as the sun, and the supreme yidam of his followers who are the Kagyu forefathers is Chakrasamvara, the method to bestow the supreme two benefits [for others and oneself]. The golden key of practice which opens the lock to the six types of word meanings\* is found here, in this sadhana arranged by the tongue of Victorious King Ratna [Rinchen Phüntsok], In this [time] of even greater degeneration, when the worst deterioration is reached. instruction and listening to such excellent teachings is rare, [and only] through the kindness of the glorious lama, am I able to slightly open my eyes to the view of the tantric meanings. However if I have not realized it correctly, my understanding is mistaken, or there is some fault in these explanations of secret tantra meanings, with [my] confessing of [many] lifetimes of sins, deities, dakinis and scholars, bear it patiently!

<sup>\*</sup> of literal meaning, true -, implied, non-implied, explicit, and non-explicit meaning

यर्ने त्यश्च व्यक्त स्थान्य स

चुन्नाःश्वान्ताः इत्यास्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्वेनाः विष्याः विष्याः विष्याः स्त्रात्वान्त्राः विष्याः स्त्रात्वान्त्राः विष्याः स्त्रात्वान्त्राः स्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्राः स्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्राः स्त्रात्वान्त्राः स्त्रात्वान्त्राः स्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्राः स्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्याः स्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्यान्त्रात्वान्त्वान्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्वान्त्रात्वान्त्वान्त्रात्वान्त्रात्वान्त्वान्त्यान्त्वान्त्वान्त्वान्त्वान्त्वान्त्वान्त्वान्त्वान्त्वान्त्वान्यान्त्वान्व

स्राहेत्ह्रम्याणेत्यो विवादस्य स्राहेत्व्य हित्त स्रोत्ह्रित्य स्रोत्ह्रित्य स्राहेत्र स्राहेत्र स्राहेत्य स्र विभाव भुवाद्य विभाव स्राहेत्य स्रोत्त स्राहेत्य स्राह

यद्यान्त्रात्त्रे स्ट्रिंग्न्त्र्या देव में के त्यानी निष्य में स्ट्रिंग्न्य स्ट्र

May the waters of virtue and positive qualities arising from this descend into the completely pure great ocean of enlightenment, and may the rain of nectar stream continuously without end and quench the thirst of all beings suffering in samsara!"

The monk Könchok Namgyal from Sharpong, the eastern retreat [near Drikung Thil], and some retreatants requested me to write down this text of *Ghantapa's Oral Instructions* in detail, which is a commentary on the *Sadhana of Shrī Chakrasamvara Bestowing the Supreme Two Benefits*.

However I became a servant of distraction, and because it is difficult to know the meaning of generation and completion just as it is, I lost a lot of time. Recently my grandson Könchok Lodrö asked me again and again to write it, and since I was attending to the Lord of Refuge [Drikung] Kyabgön and his followers, I showed [my notes] again and again to the great Rinpoche. After thorough examination with his [own] realization of the mind, I received his permission [to write this text].

In the year of the "great drum" [1802] at Yangrigar monastery, the [seat of the] great Trolung [Dharma assembly, I,] Döndrup Chöwang, follower of the Drigungpa and throne holder of the Kham Khyo monastery, wrote [this text], presented it for Rinpoche's consideration and received his consent along with aspiration prayers. This is how [this text came about].

# 4. Afterword by Kyabgön Padme Gyaltsen

The Omniscient Victorious One, venerable Ratna [Rinchen Püntsok] composed the *Sadhana of the Chakrasamvara Five Deities that Bestows the Two Benefits* (according to the Ghantapa system) which is the practice of the uncommon heart deity of the Drigungpa Protectors Chetsang and Chungstang Rinpoche. [This] gives instructions to attain the supreme and common [accomplishments] in one life time and contains all the perfected qualities of the [five] paths and [ten] bhumis of all the Panditas of holy India included in one [sadhana].

यदे हिंदा श्री प्रक्षेत्र हिंदा शर्शे प्रवेदिश हें वा शर्श हिंदा हिंदा

चयास्तराहे स्वाप्त स्व स्वाप्त स्वापत स्वाप्त स्वाप्

तक्ताक्री। सर्वतात्त्रम् अप्तिष्यात्त्रेत्रम् अप्तिष्यात्त्रेत्त्रम् अस्ति स्वत्यात्त्रम् अस्ति स्वत्यात्त्रम् सर्वत्यात्त्रम् अस्तिष्यात्त्रम् अस्ति स्वत्यात्त्रम् अस्ति स्वत्यात्त्रम् अस्ति स्वत्यात्त्रम् स्वत्यात्त्रम् सर्वत्यात्त्रम् अस्ति स्वत्यात्त्रम् स्वत्यात्त्रम् स्वत्यात्त्रम् स्वत्यात्त्रम् स्वत्यात्त्रम् स्वत्यात्त्रम्

हिन.नर्ना. के. ये. मार्ट. मूं. मुंचा. सूचा स्वी. लंबा त्रम. नत्र. के. मोर्ट. कुचा. सूचा. सूच. सूचा. स

यक्ष्यः क्ष्यः क्ष्यः स्थाः स्याः स्थाः स्याः स्थाः स

[But nowadays] someone who perfectly realizes the ultimate meaning of the generation and completion stage of this [sadhana] is more rare among us than a star in the daytime.

And at this time [when people who] merely know how to hold and play the damaru and bell pretend that they know the ritual, this traditional way of explanation from the precious practice lineage is vanishing like fog being scattered by the wind.

[Now] our Dharma son, the throne holder of the Kham Khyo Nyindzong monastery, Döndrup Chöwang, who understands without fail all ways of reasoning, the baskets of teachings, and the tantric generation and completion stages, composed [the text] called *Ghantapa's Oral Instructions* which [presents] the mother tantra's ultimate meaning as it is.

After its careful examination, [I,] Drikungpa Tenzin Padme Gyaltsen saw this composition as intrinsically valid. Henceforth this ritual giving the meaning of generation and completion should not remain mere words, but be practiced seriously and with great effort by those who have entered the gate of our teachings.

# 5. Two different supplication prayers for this printing to be clear

By the power of this explanation of the generation and completion stages' ultimate meaning, after completely drying out the great oceans of samsara, may all embodied beings co-emergently become manifest inseparably one taste with the all pervading lord Heruka.

#### SHRĪ YANTU.

I bow to the supreme lama, who just by hearing his name, puts an end

to the gloomy darkness of samsara and nirvana with the radiant light of wisdom, and who makes flourish the thousand petals of the vajra vehicle in the lotus grove of the mind of all beings.

चे न्यं नः स्टः मी अः नहनः मर्दे | विः हं प्पङ्गा विः नं पङ्गा विः नं विः नं पङ्गा विः नं वि

Like the feathered birds abiding on a golden mountain,\*
these notes arose from the lama's kindness,
and to spread them so they won't vanish,
they accomplished this printing:
the [contributors of such] conducive conditions are
the wood workers who engraved the letters,
printers, workers, editors and so forth, all the ones
who gathered merit here with this wholesome work,
may all their worldly fetters be completely loosened
and may [they become] inseparably one taste
with the all pervading lord Heruka.

In the Drigung Dzong monastery embraced by sun rays, the magic of printing many from one was accomplished, along with my prayers of aspiration for the workers.

VIJA YANTU.

(It is said:

"May all beings eternally enjoy supreme bliss, [through] multiplying illumination of the two stages of Bhagavan Chakrasamvara, who is the supreme embodiment of bliss and delight of great secret Vajrayana praised by the Sugatas (Gone to Bliss)."

Thus is written by the commoner Ratna Mudra.)

\* This refers to a Tibetan saying:

# यार विवा वासे र की रे व्यापान से प्रत्यी र वि व्यापान सम्मान समान सम्मान सम्मान

"If residing on a golden mountain, such feathered birds will all become golden," meaning that by relying on a good teacher who is like a golden mountain, oneself will become gold.

यदे : अर्क्षेता : क्षेत्र : क्षेत्र

Grammatical corrections: Könchok Tsültrim,

Comparison with additional manuscripts: Padma Rigdzin,

Book design and layout: Druk Tsering,

Responsible for text input and editing: Könchok Pasang.

#### Author of

"Ghantapa's Oral Transmission of Co-emergent Five Deity Chakrasamvara:" Nyindzong Monastery Throne Holder Döndrup Chöwang

First Edition published by Drikung Kagyu Scripture Publishing House in March 2009.

Printed by Shiva Printing House, Dehra Dhun, April 2009, book size: 5.5 by 8 inches, printed: 500

Translation into English and formatting: Mark Riege Corrections: Acharya Kinley Gyaltsen, Jan Ulrich Sobisch and Rachel Dodds with additional explanations by Khenpo Nyima Gyaltsen and HH Drikung Kyabgön Chetsang Rinpoche.

End notes by Jan Ulrich Sobisch:

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> dGongs gcig 1.21: "The difference between hīnayāna and mahāyāna is the resolve for awakening (bodhicitta) that is cultivated."

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> dGongs gcig 1.22: "The difference between mantra and [the vehicle of] characteristics (sūtra) is tantric consecration."

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> The *Cakrasamvaratantra* (with 51 chapters) is internally referring to itself as  $\acute{S}r\bar{\imath}$ -Herukābhidhāna (The Discourse of  $\acute{S}r\bar{\imath}$ -Heruka) at the end of each chapter. It is also widely known under the external title  $Tantrar\bar{a}ja$ - $\acute{s}r\bar{\imath}$ -laghusambara and can be found in the Derge Kanjur in vol. 77, fols. 213b1-246b7.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup> The Sanskrit version of the *Cakrasamvaratantra* has simply "yogaguhyam," the secret of yoga (though the Tibetan translator chose to translate this as *rnal 'byor gsang mtha'*). So the fourth category is in the *Cakrasamvaratantra* itself, not called "anuttara," but "yoga-guhya" ("Secret of Yoga", or: "Hidden Yoga"). Note that these categories are named very differently in all tantras. In addition, the passage is also differently interpreted by Kagyupas and Sakyapas, the latter reading six categories (not 4) into this passage.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> rgyud phyi ma is a technical expression and is in Sanskrit uttaratantra, meaning "subsequent tantra." This is another division like "explanatory tantra" (vyākhya / bshad pa'i) etc. I'm pretty sure that this is the Ji bzhin brnyes pa nam mkha' dang mnyam pa zhes bya ba'i rgyud (Yathālabdakhasamatantra), Derge vol. 81 fols. 86b1-89b7. It has 5 chapters (in the Tibetan translation). Even though our Tibetan text is here not very clear, I suspect that it wants to say that the 100,000 verses have not all been translated to Tibetan,

but only the first(?) five chapters, for whichever reason. (Often the reason is that the early kings did not allow chapters containing violent rites to be translated). But look also below, for the other *Nam mkha'* tantra!

- <sup>6</sup> Derge vol. 78, fols. 1b1-125a7, rGyud kyi rgyal po chen po dpal rdo rje mkha' 'gro (Śrī-vajradāka-nāma-mahātantrarāja); it is an "uncommon vyākhyatantra" (thun mong ma yin pa'i bshad rgyud), which means that it is not shared with other tantras (such as Hevajra), but exlusively a vyākhyatantra of Cakrasamvara.
- <sup>7</sup> Derge vol. 79 fols. 34a1-44b5 rNal 'byor ma'i kun tu spyod pa (Yoginīsañcārya), an uncommon vyākhya tantra
- 8 Derge vol. 77, fols. 247a1-370a7, mNgon par brjod pa'i rgyud bla ma (Abhidhāna-uttaratantra), an uncommon vyākhyatantra
- <sup>9</sup> If it is really the "*Kha sbyor*" it should be Derge no. 376, *rNal 'byor ma bzhi' i kha sbyor gyi rgyud (Caturyoginīsamputa-tantra*). But there is also another text that is called *Samputa* or *Samputi*, i.e. Derge no. 381, *Yang dag par sbyor ba zhes bya ba' i rgyud chen po (Sampūti-nāma-mahātantra*). Both are common *vyākhyatantras*, shared with Hevajra. They probably refer here to the second one, which is really a famous tantra. The other tantra is actually mentioned below in the section concerning Darikapas opinion. But in this case there is a mix-up in our text here, because this one here should not be called "*Kha sbyor (Samputa/ti)*" but "*Yang dag par sbyor ba (Samputi)*."
- <sup>10</sup> Derge vol. 79, fols. 1b1-33b7, dPal khrag 'thung mngon par 'byung ba (Śrī-herukābhyudaya), an uncommon vyākhyatantra.
- <sup>11</sup> Derge vol. 79, fols. 52b5-60a7, *Phag mo mngon par brjod pa bshad pa'i rgyud kyi phyi ma las phag mo mngon par byang chub pa (Khyāvajravārāhyabhidhanāta-tantrottara-vārāhi-abhibodhiya)*, an uncommon *vyākhyatantra*.
- 12 Derge vol. 78, fols. 265a1-311a6, dPal bde mchog 'byung ba zhes bya ba'i rgyud kyi rgyal po chen po (Śrī-mahāsambarodaya-tantrarāja), an uncommon vyākhyatantra.
- <sup>13</sup> Derge vol. 79, fols. 44b6-52b, *rNal 'byor ma bzhi'i kha sbyor gyi rgyud (Caturyoginīsamputa-tantra*). Compare the other "*samputa*" above: here is the text that is the *Kha sbyor*, but it is wrongly abbreviated as *rNal 'byor ma bzhi* instead.
- <sup>14</sup> Derge vol. 78, fols. 137a1-264b7, dPal mkha' 'gro rgya mtsho chen po rnal 'byor ma'i rgyud kyi rgyal po (Śrī-dākārnava-mahāyoginī-tantrarāja)
- <sup>15</sup> There is no doubt that this refers to Derge vol. 79, fols. 261b3-263a7, *dPal bde mchog nam mkha' dang mnyam pa'i rgyud kyi rgyal po* (Śrī-sambarakhasama-tantrarāja), because this tantra is listed by Rigdzin Chökyi Dragpa in his *bDe mchog chos 'byung* as a *man ngag-tantra*. However, this one has only 3 chapters (compare the other *Nam mkha'* tantra above!). There is some confusion here. But below our author clearly mentions 3 chapters and this tantra has indeed, as mentioned below, three chapters: *bskyed rim, rdzogs rim, las sna tshogs*. One can find this tantra in Derge vol. 79, pp. 522-525.
- <sup>16</sup> This term is used for several different collections.
- <sup>17</sup> dGongs gcig 6.1
- <sup>18</sup> dGongs gcig 5.8: "One must take the deities etc. that are taught in sūtra and tantra as the principle ones."

  This is chiefly to say that deities taught by some lamas, who saw them in their dreams or in visions, but for which there is no tantra, are rather a "blessing of mara." They might give bliss and samadhis etc., but in the end they are deceiving and not leading one out of samsara.

<sup>19</sup> dGongs gcig 5.9: "All the detailed rituals are especially necessary for those of highest faculties."

That is not to say that detailed rituals are for beginners, because they have so much to learn, and abbreviated ones are for advanced disciples, because they already know so much. On the contrary: the advanced must do detailed rituals through which they will develop all the detailed Buddha qualities. This is also not to say that detailed rituals are bad for those who are not advanced, but chiefly argues against the idea that advanced people only have to practice abbreviations.

<sup>20</sup> dGongs gcig 5.10: "All elaborations arise through the dependent origination of the nature."

From the point of *yidam* practice, this is an extremely important vajra point. The chief point is that the *yidam* is based on the true nature of reality through dependent origination. This is taught by Jigten Sumgon because some people think that the elaborations of the *yidam* are not true reality, but something that needs further interpretation. See the article "Searching the Buddha" in http://dgongs1.com on this point.

- <sup>21</sup> This refers to Rigdzin Chökyi Dragpa's bDe mchog chos 'byung.
- <sup>22</sup> Sanskrit: matṛka
- <sup>23</sup> dGongs gcig 8.30: "To engage instantaneously in the deity is a profound vital point," on which Rigdzin Chökyi Dragpa comments: "to engage instantaneously in a single moment in the manner of clearly bringing to mind one's complete establishment as the deity from the beginning and the knowledge of that is a very profound vital point."
- <sup>24</sup> Derge vol. 78, (Śrī-mahāsambarodaya-tantrarāja), this passage is on p. 615.
- <sup>25</sup> Same text as above, the 32<sup>nd</sup> chapter begins on p. 614.
- <sup>26</sup> The text begins in Derge Tanjur, vol. 21, p. 466, bCom ldan 'das dpal 'khor lo bde mchog sgrub pa'i thabs rin po che yid bzhin gyi nor, (Śrībhagavaccakraśambarasādhanaratnacintāmani).
- <sup>27</sup> The text is actually not by Luhipa himself, but by Tathagatavajra and it is a subcommentary (yang 'grel) of Luhipa's dPal bcom ldan 'das mngon par rtogs pa (Śrī-bhagavadabhisamaya),

Derge Tanjur, vol. 21, fols. 186b3-193a1.

- <sup>28</sup> This text begins in Derge, vol. 22 on p. 569, *L'u yi pa'i mngon par rtogs pa'i 'grel pa'i t'i k'a khyad par gsal byed (Lūyipādābhisamayavṛittitīkāviśesadyota)* by Tathāgatavajra, Derge Tanjur, vol. 22, fols. 285a4-308b2.
- <sup>29</sup> gSang ba rnal 'byor chen po'i rgyud rdo rje rtse mo (Vajraśikharamahāguhyayoga-tantra), Derge Kanjur, vol. 84, fols. 142b1-274a5.
- <sup>30</sup> This is probably: rNal 'byor chen po'i rgyud dpal rdo rje phreng ba mngon par brjod pa rgyud thams cad kyi snying po gsang ba rnam par phye ba zhes bya ba (Śrī-vajramāla-abhidhānamahāyogatantra-sarvatantrahṛdaya-rahasyavibhanga-iti), Derge Kanjur, vol. 81, fols. 208a1-277b3.
- <sup>31</sup> Hevajratantrarāja, brag pa gnyis pa, Kye'i rdo rje zhes bya ba rgyud kyi rgyal po, Derge Kanjur, vol. 80, fols. 1b1-13b5.
- <sup>32</sup> The "a" at the end of Heruka and the "a" from the beginning of "aham" are joined together and according to the sandhi rules of Sanskrit, they become the sound "o."

33 The term bodhicitta has variously been translated into Western languages as "thought / mind / will / wish of enlightenment" or "thought / mind turned to / for enlightenment." If we try to understand bodhicitta, we must understand its conative, cognitive, and emotive aspects. "Conative" means that bodhicitta has a strong component of being a "will" (Tib. 'dun pa) to become a Buddha. "Cognitive" means that bodhicitta includes an understanding or insight (Tib. shes rab) into the factors conducive to that goal, such as the necessary conduct, etc. "Emotive" means that bodhicitta roots in the emotions of love and compassion. Now, the "will to become a Buddha," the insight into conducive conduct, and the grounding in love and compassion can hardly be understood in English as being "a mind" (German "Geist"). All these aspects seem to be covered better by the English term "resolve for" (German "Entschluß zu"), i.e. the resolve to become a Buddha, which is aware of the conduct conducive to that, feeding on love and compassion for the beings. Furthermore, bodhicitta has also the aspects of being bound by a vow (sdom pa), being cultivated or produced (bskyed pa), and being taken up (blang ba). This, too, fits better to the English "resolve" than to "mind." It is true, though, that the Buddhist tradition understands bodhicitta as being "mind" (sems) rather than "derived from mind" (sems byung), however, that sems is not equivalent to the English term "mind" and if one would rather mechanically translate all occurrences of sems as "mind", one would have to do that strictly within the framework of Indian Buddhist philosophy and such texts that were translated in that way would hardly be understandable to the Western reader without a great amount of study (examples of such translations can be found in the work of Jeffrey Hopkins). The term "enlightenment" has been coined by the protagonists of the so-called "Age of Enlightenment," a cultural movement of intellectuals in the 17th/18th century in Europe and the United States. Its principle goals were advancing knowledge, promoting science, and opposing superstition and an intolerant church. The choice of the term seems to have in mind ideas such as "bringing light to," "illuminating" etc. The Sanskrit term "bodhi," being the verbal noun for "Buddha," does not contain any metaphor of "light," but rather of "eye-opening understanding recognition/comprehension" in the sense of "waking up" to something. A further point is that "to be enlightened" or "to get enlightened" etc. indicate the influence of a higher power as the source of the light, whereas "to be awakened" and "to awaken" does not.

<sup>34</sup> Anatomically *lce'i rtsa ba* refers to the two blood vessels below the tongue.

<sup>35</sup> This is an instruction by Kṛṣṇācārya variously known as "Nag-po-pa's *O la pa ti,*" or "*dPyid kyi thig le,*" or "*gTum mo lam rdzogs.*" This information stems from tantric commentaries of the Sa-skya-pas.

<sup>36</sup> dGongs gcig 6.8: "[He maintained] a realization that isn't [even] reached by the Three Great Ones."

The Three Great Ones (*dbu ma chen po, phyag rgya chen po*, and *rdzogs pa chen po*) don't touch Jigten Gönpo's realization. This is a teaching that goes back to at least Gampopa and refers to the last of the four yogas of mahamudra ("the yoga that is not to be practiced"). It is to say that whatever is expressed through any teaching does not alter, or impair, or even touch this realization.

<sup>37</sup> bCom ldan 'das dpal 'khor lo bde mchog gi sgrub thabs rin po che gtsug gi nor bu (Bhagavacchrīcakraśambarasyasādhanaratnacūdamanī) Derge Tanjur, vol. 21, fols. 243b6-251a7.

<sup>38</sup> Two texts are possible, both by Abhayākara, both called *Man ngag snye ma*:

dPal yang dag par sbyor ba'i rgyud kyi rgyal po'i rgya cher 'grel pa man ngag gi snye ma (Śrīsampuyatantrarāja-tīkāmnāyamañjarī), Derge Tanjur, vol. 7, fols. 1-316a7, and

Man ngag gi snye ma zhes bya ba rgyud thams cad kyi skyed rdzogs thun mong du bstan pa (Upadeśamañjarī-nāma-sarvatantrotpannopapannasāmānyabhāsya), Peking Tanjur, vol. 87,
fols. 188b5-210a3.

<sup>39</sup> snyom 'jug mdzad pa means either "entering into meditative absorption" (ting nge 'dzin la mnyam par 'jog pa), or "sexual intercourse" (khrig pa). The meaning is often intentionally ambiguous.

<sup>40</sup> It is clear here that 'pho med is synonymous with 'dzag pa med pa, i.e. "not dripping," or not emitting semen. Describing Ghantapa's system Kongtrul Rinpoche says: "Having bound that drop as 'non-dripping/emitting,' the joy of inborn stability of the lower [opening]..." (thig le de nyid 'pho med du bcings nas mas brtan lhan skyes kyi dga', see Kongtrul, Treasury of Knowledge, Book 8/3, page 174).